

BM

105

A159m

1887

A

AL OF SCRIPTURE HISTORY

---

L. B. ABRAHAMS., B.A.

LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.



THE LIBRARY  
OF  
THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA  
LOS ANGELES

Fa 24







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

# THE HOLY LAND as allotted by JOSHUA

Scale of English Miles  
10 6 0 10 20  
Cities of Refuge ▲  
Levitical Cities ●



B 103

A MANUAL OF  
SCRIPTURE HISTORY

FOR USE IN

*JEWISH SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES*

BY

LOUIS B. ABRAHAMS, B.A.

*SEVENTH EDITION*

LONDON  
TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL  
1887

[*All rights reserved*]

A JOURNAL OF

# SCOTTISH HISTORY

1851

EDITED BY J. G. CAMPBELL

*M. Gordon*

1851

1851

THE SCOTTISH HISTORY SOCIETY

1851

1851

BM  
105  
A159m  
1887

## PREFACE.

---

THE place which this volume should occupy in the curriculum of study is easily defined. It should serve as an introduction to the Bible. The Sacred Volume itself was never intended to serve as a text-book for Scripture history. It is undoubtedly the repository of our national history; but it is very much more than this. It is the treasure-house of our religious beliefs, the digest of our civil and criminal code, the guide to our ceremonial observances. To select its historical passages, to place them together so as to form a connected whole, to reconcile their apparent difficulties, has ever proved to the busy teacher an anxious and wearisome task. The want of such a work as the present has accordingly long been felt, and acting upon the suggestion of many of my colleagues, I have endeavoured to satisfy it.

Intended for the use of children in Standards III. to VI. of our schools (ages 9 to 13), the book has been written in simple yet progressive language. Throughout, the very

2107643

words of the English Version have been frequently introduced, so that they may prove a link between this volume and the Bible itself.

I desire to express my grateful acknowledgments to the Rev. the Chief Rabbi and to the Rev. Dr. Hermann Adler, who were good enough to read my manuscript, and to favour me with many valuable hints.

L. B. A.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION . . . . .	1

## PART I.

### FROM THE CREATION TO THE DEATH OF JOSEPH.

CHAP. I.	The Creation . . . . .	5
„ II.	Eden—Man's First Sin and Punishment . . . . .	5
„ III.	From Adam to Nch . . . . .	6
„ IV.	Noah—The Flood . . . . .	7
„ V.	The Tower of Babel . . . . .	8
„ VI.	The Life of Abraham . . . . .	9
„ VII.	Life of Abraham ( <i>continued</i> )—The War of the Kings . . . . .	11
„ VIII.	Life of Abraham ( <i>continued</i> )—Birth of Ishmael—Destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah . . . . .	12
„ IX.	Life of Abraham ( <i>continued</i> )—Birth of Isaac—The offering on Mount Moriah—Death of Abraham . . . . .	14
„ X.	Life of Isaac . . . . .	16
„ XI.	Life of Jacob . . . . .	18
„ XII.	Life of Joseph—His Captivity in Egypt . . . . .	21
„ XIII.	Life of Joseph ( <i>continued</i> )—Joseph made Governor of Egypt . . . . .	23
„ XIV.	Death of Jacob and of Joseph . . . . .	25

## PART II.

### FROM THE DEATH OF JOSEPH TO THE DEATH OF MOSES.

CHAP. I.	Oppression of the Israelites in Egypt—The Call of Moses . . . . .	27
„ II.	The Ten Plagues—The Redemption from Egypt . . . . .	29



	PAGE
CHAP. III. Passage of the Red Sea—Battle with the Amalekites . . . . .	31
„ IV. The Decalogue . . . . .	33
„ V. The Golden Calf—The Tabernacle . . . . .	34
„ VI. The Priesthood—Nadab and Abihu . . . . .	36
„ VII. The Spies . . . . .	38
„ VIII. The Rebellion of Korah . . . . .	40
„ IX. Death of Miriam and of Aaron . . . . .	42
„ X. Balak and Balaam . . . . .	43
„ XI. The People Numbered—Punishment of the Midianites . . . . .	46
„ XII. The Last Days of Moses . . . . .	47

### PART III.

#### FROM THE DEATH OF MOSES TO THE CHOICE OF SAUL.

CHAP. I. The Spies sent to Jericho—Passage of the Jordan . . . . .	49
„ II. Fall of Jericho—Achan's Sin—Capture of Ai . . . . .	51
„ III. The Gibeonites—The Five Kings of Canaan . . . . .	53
„ IV. Wars with the Canaanites—Division of Palestine—Death of Joshua . . . . .	54
„ V. The Judges—Othniel to Deborah . . . . .	56
„ VI. The Judges ( <i>continued</i> )—Gideon . . . . .	58
„ VII. The Judges—Gideon ( <i>continued</i> ) — Abimelech — Tola Jair . . . . .	60
„ VIII. Jephthah—Samson . . . . .	62
„ IX. Samson ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	65
„ X. Micah—Destruction of Gibeah—Ruth . . . . .	66
„ XI. Eli—Birth of Samuel—His Dedication to God's Service . . . . .	69
„ XII. War with the Philistines—Capture of the Ark—Death of Eli and his Sons . . . . .	71

### PART IV.

#### FROM SAUL'S KINGSHIP TO THE DEATH OF SOLOMON.

CHAP. I. Saul made King—His First Offence . . . . .	73
„ II. Saul's Wars with the Philistines and Amalekites—David Anointed King . . . . .	74



	PAGE
CHAP. III. Saul jealous of David—He seeks to kill him—The Love of David and Jonathan . . . . .	77
„ IV. David an Exile—His Wanderings—Death of Samuel . . . . .	79
„ V. Saul and the Witch of Endor—Death of Saul . . . . .	81
„ VI. David King over Judah and Ishbosheth over Israel—The Ark brought to Jerusalem . . . . .	83
„ VII. David's various Wars—His Sin with Bathsheba . . . . .	85
„ VIII. Absalom's Rebellion — David's Flight and Return — Absalom's Death . . . . .	87
„ IX. The Last Days of David—The Psalms . . . . .	89
„ X. Solomon ascends the Throne—He builds the Temple . . . . .	91
„ XI. Solomon's Greatness and Death . . . . .	94

## PART V.

### THE KINGDOM OF ISRAEL.

CHAP. I. Jeroboam—Nadab . . . . .	96
„ II. Baasha—Elah—Zimri—Omri—Ahab—Elijah . . . . .	97
„ III. Ahab—Elijah and the Priests of Baal . . . . .	99
„ IV. Ahab—Elijah—Benhadad . . . . .	101
„ V. Naboth's Vineyard—Elijah—Death of Ahab—Ahaziah . . . . .	102
„ VI. Elijah—Elisha—Jehoram . . . . .	104
„ VII. Elisha's Miracles . . . . .	106
„ VIII. Jehoram—War with the Syrians—Death of Benhadad . . . . .	108
„ IX. Jehu—Death of Jezebel—Jehoahaz—Death of Elisha . . . . .	110
„ X. Jeroboam II. to the End of the Kingdom . . . . .	112

## PART VI.

### THE KINGDOM OF JUDAH,

CHAP. I. Rehoboam—Asa—Jehoshaphat . . . . .	115
„ II. Joram—Ahaziah—Interregnum—Joash—Amaziah . . . . .	117
„ III. Uzziah—Jotham—Ahaz—Hezekiah . . . . .	119
„ IV. Hezekiah ( <i>continued</i> )—Manasseh—Amon . . . . .	121
„ V. Josiah—Jehoahaz . . . . .	123
„ VI. Jehoiakin—Jehoiachin—Zedekiah . . . . .	125

## PART VII.

## THE CAPTIVITY.—THE RESTORATION.

		PAGE
CHAP.	I. Gedaliah—Ishmael . . . . .	128
„	II. The Captivity—Daniel . . . . .	129
„	III. Daniel—Belshazzar . . . . .	130
„	IV. End of the Captivity—The Temple Rebuilt . . . . .	132
„	V. History of Esther . . . . .	133
„	VI. History of Esther ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	135
„	VII. Ezra—Nehemiah . . . . .	136

## APPENDIX I.

Chronological Tables . . . . .	139
--------------------------------	-----

## APPENDIX II.

The Jewish Year—Its Festivals and Fasts . . . . .	144
---	-----

## GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

---

THE country which was the scene of the chief events related in the Bible, is situated in the south-west portion of Asiatic Turkey. It forms a part of the province of Syria, and is under the rule of the Sultan. It is now inhabited mostly by Turks, but there are large Jewish communities at Jerusalem, Tiberias, Hebron, Safed and Joppa. A considerable number of Christians dwell in Jerusalem, Nazareth, Acre, &c.

**Names.**—This country is known by many different names, the principal of which are :—

- 1.—*Canaan*, after the youngest son of Ham, whose offspring dwelt in the parts between the Jordan and the Mediterranean.
- 2.—*Palestine*. This name was derived from the Philistines who dwelt along the western coast.
- 3.—*The Land of Israel*, from the name bestowed upon Jacob, and afterwards adopted by his seed.
- 4.—*The Land of Judah*. This name was first applied to the kingdom of Judah, but was in later times extended to the whole country.
- 5.—*The Land of Promise*, from the promise made to Abraham that his offspring should possess it.
- 6.—*The Holy Land*, because it was the seat of the worship of the true God, and because the Lord revealed himself there to his prophets.

**Boundaries.**—North by the Mountains of Lebanon; west by the Mediterranean Sea; south by Arabia; and east by the ranges of Hermon and Bashan, and the Syrian Desert.

**Extent.**—Length from N. to S. 185 miles, breadth from W. to E. about 70 miles. Area 11,000 square miles. It is about the size of Switzerland.

**Population.**—In the time of David the population was probably about 5,000,000.

**Divisions.—**

On the N.	Asher.	Chief towns:—	Accho, Achzib.
	Naphtali	„	Kadesh, Hazor, Hamath.
	Zebulun	„	Tiberias.
In the Middle.	Manasseh		Megiddo, Oprah, Dothan, Bethshan.
	Issachar	„	Endor, Shunem, Jezreel, Gilboa.
	Ephraim	„	Samaria, Tirzah, Gilgal, Shechem, Shiloh, Timnath Serah.
In the South	Dan	„	Modin, Ekron, Ajalon, Tinnah, Eshtaol, Joppa.
	Benjamin	„	Jerusalem, Jericho, Bethel, Ai, Gibeon, Ramah, Michmash, Kirjath-Jearim.
	Judah	„	Bethlehem, Makkedah, Libnah, Hebron, Adullam, Engedi, Tekoah, Lachish.
	Simeon	„	Beer-sheba, Askelon, Gaza.
On the East of Jordan:—			
	Manasseh	„	Ashtaroth-Karnaim, Golan, Edrei.
	Gad	„	Succoth, Matanaim, Peniel, Ramoth-Gilead, Rabbah, Mizpah.
	Reuben	„	Heshbon, Dibon, Medeba.

**Mountains.**—Palestine is a very mountainous country, though the peaks are not as a rule high. The principal ranges are: Lebanon and Anti-Lebanon in the north; principal height Mount Hermon, 11,000 feet. Mount Tabor, in Zebulun. Mount Gilboa in Issachar. Mount Carmel in Manasseh. Mountains of Ephraim, principal heights Ebal and Gerizim. Mount of Olives in Benjamin. Mountains of Judah. Mount Gilead in Gad. Mountains of Abarim, with Mount Nebo and Mount Pisgah in Reuben.

**Plains.**—The Plain of Jezreel in Manasseh and Issachar; Sharon, on the west coast; Esdraelon in Issachar; Plain of the Jordan on both sides of that river; Hinnom and Jéhosaphat near Jerusalem; Ajalon in Dan.

**Rivers.**—The Jordan, forming the eastern boundary, rises in Lebanon and flows into the Dead Sea; the Kishon through Issachar and Manasseh into the Mediterranean Sea; River Jabok through Dan into the Jordan; River Kidron through Judah into the Dead Sea. Smaller rivers are Besor in Judah, Cherith in Benjamin, and Arnon in Gad. Besides these there are many mountain streams which are almost dry in summer.

**Lakes.**—Merom and Chinneroth between Naphtali and Eastern Manasseh; the Dead Sea between Benjamin, Judah, and Reuben.

**Climate.**—The Holy Land enjoys a variety of climates. The

hilly regions are cool and even cold, while the sheltered plains and valleys are as hot as the tropics. It is an easy matter to pass in an hour's journey from spring to summer. There are two rainy seasons. The first rains fall in the month of *Cheshvan* (November), and the latter rains in *Nisan* (April). The dews are very heavy, and compensate in great measure for the absence of rain during the drougthy summer.

**Soil.**—In Biblical times Palestine was very fertile, “a land flowing with milk and honey.” The land is less productive now, owing especially to the destruction of the forests, and the consequent washing away of the soil. Much of its ancient fertility could be restored by replanting trees and covering the hill slopes with earth.

**Minerals.**—Iron and copper in the Lebanon range—“a land whose stones are iron, and out of whose hills thou mayest dig copper”—salt and bitumen on the borders of the Dead Sea; sulphur in the vale of Siddim; nitre.

**Vegetables.**—Wheat, barley, rye, cucumber, hyssop, manna, pulse, many spices, flax, melon.

**Trees.**—Cedar, almond, cypress, palm, oak, olive, poplar, acacia, sycamore, terebinth, vine, willow, myrrh, galbanum.

**Fruits.**—Apricot, almond, date, fig, grape, olive, pomegranate.

**Flowers.**—Rose, lily.

**Animals.**—Wild and tame ass, leopard, ox, sheep, goat, bear, lion, camel, wild bull, deer, wolf, bee, ant, locust, scorpion, dove, owl, quail, stork, raven, ostrich.

**Original Inhabitants.**—When the children of Israel entered the Holy Land under the leadership of Joshua, they found it inhabited by seven tribes; the Canaanites, Hivites and Perizzites dwelt in the north, the Jebusites in the centre, the Hittites and Amorites on the south and east. The Gergashites occupied the eastern side of the Sea of Chinneroth.

**Neighbouring Nations.**—The western sea-coast from Raphia to Joppa was occupied by the Philistines. To the north of these dwelt the Phœnicians. To the south-west lay Egypt. On the east of the Dead Sea stretched the land of Ammon and Moab. Syria (Aram) lay due north, while east of the Syrian Desert were Assyria, Media, Babylonia, Persia and India.

**Commerce.**—Trade has existed from the period when men first formed themselves into communities. In the history of Abraham we read of money current with the “merchant.” In the time of Jacob we hear of well-ordered caravans trading between distant countries. The Jews were chiefly agriculturists.



Although there is no doubt that they bartered and traded with the neighbouring peoples, still they cannot be said to have had a foreign trade till the reign of Solomon. He imported many commodities from Egypt, the most important being horses, chariots and fine linen. To pay for these he obtained gold and precious stones from India and Arabia. He fitted out fleets that traded regularly with foreign countries. Starting from Ezion-gaber and Elath at the head of the Red Sea, they sailed to India, Ceylon and the East Coast of Africa, probably carrying corn and oil; and returned laden with gold, silver, precious stones, peacocks, apes, various rare woods, and ivory. Palestine from its position was well placed for purposes of trade, being the highway between Egypt and other African countries on the one hand, and Assyria, Persia and India on the other.

## PART I.

### FROM THE CREATION TO THE DEATH OF JOSEPH.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### The Creation.

**The World Created.**—In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. On the first day He made the light, on the second the heavens, on the third the dry land. On this day He commanded the earth to bring forth herbs, grasses, and trees. On the fourth day He made the sun, moon, and stars: the sun to give light by day, the moon and stars to light up the night. On the fifth day He created fish and fowl. On the sixth day He made all cattle, creeping things, and beasts of the earth. Lastly, all things having been formed ready for his use, God created man in His own image and breathed in his nostrils the breath of life. On the seventh day God rested from all His work. "And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it, because that in it He had rested from all His work, which God created and made."

#### CHAPTER II.

##### Eden—Man's First Sin and Punishment.

**Eden.**—God planted a garden in Eden in the eastern part of the world, and placed in it the man, Adam, whom He had made. God caused to grow in this garden every tree that was pleasant to the sight and good for food, and in the midst of the garden He placed the tree of life, and also the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. Four rivers went forth from Eden to water the country round about; they were named Pison, Gihon, Hiddekel, and Euphrates. When God placed Adam in the Garden of Eden, He gave him one command. He said to the man, "of every tree in the garden thou mayest eat; but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it, for on the day thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

**Eve.**—God created the first woman to be a proper help for the man. And Adam called his wife's name Eve (*Chavah*), because she was the mother of all living.

**The First Sin.**—Now the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field, and he tempted Eve to break the only command which God had then given. Going to the woman he persuaded her to eat of the fruit of the forbidden tree. But Eve answered him that she dared not eat of the fruit for fear of the punishment of death. Then the serpent told her that she would not die; but that on the day she and Adam eat of it, their eyes should be opened, and they should become as God, knowing good and evil. Eve upon this allowed herself to be persuaded. She ate of the fruit of the forbidden tree, and gave some of the fruit also to Adam, and he did eat. Thus did the first man and the first woman commit the first sin.

**Adam and Eve driven from Eden.**—Later in the day Adam and Eve heard the voice of God in the garden. Knowing they had done wrong, they tried to hide themselves. But God at once charged them with their guilt. Adam laid the whole blame of the sin upon Eve; Eve, in her turn, blamed the serpent for tempting her. But God would not allow these excuses. They were all guilty alike; and punishment quickly followed. The serpent was to become the lowest and most despised of animals. Adam and Eve were to be driven out of the garden of Eden. They were to learn what pain and sorrow and suffering meant. Instead of living in ease upon the fruits of the garden, they were to labour and toil for their daily bread. “In the sweat of thy brow shalt thou eat bread, till thou returnest unto the ground, for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.” In these words was their doom spoken. Then, lest they should take of the tree of life, and eat thereof and live for ever, God drove Adam and Eve out of the Garden of Eden, and to prevent their return, He placed at the gate the awful Cherubim, and the flaming sword to guard the way to the tree of life.

### CHAPTER III.

#### From Adam to Noah.

**Cain and Abel.**—Adam and Eve had two sons, Cain and Abel. Cain was a tiller of the ground, and Abel was a keeper of sheep. The two brothers brought offerings unto God—Cain of the fruit of the ground; Abel of the best of his flocks. God was pleased with Abel, and with his offering; but to Cain and to his offering He showed no respect. This made Cain very angry, and one day, being with Abel in the fields, he rose up against his brother and slew him. After this the Lord said unto Cain, “Where is



thy brother Abel?" and Cain answered, "I know not, am I my brother's keeper?" But God showed him that He knew of his crime. Cain became a wanderer upon the face of the earth, and afterwards settled in the land of Nod, eastward of Eden. Here a son was born unto him, whose name was Enoch. The fourth descendant from Enoch was called Lamech. He had two wives, Adah and Zillah. Adah was the mother of Jabal, who was the first to dwell in tents, and to study the art of rearing cattle. She also had a son Jubal, who invented the harp and flute. Zillah too bare a son, whose name was Tubal-cain, who first used instruments made of copper and iron. To Adam and Eve was now born a third son, named Seth.

There were ten generations from Adam to Noah, viz. :—Adam, Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech, Noah.

## CHAPTER IV.

### Noah—The Flood.

**The Flood.**—During the life of Noah the people on the earth became very wicked. So great was their evil-doing that God repented that He had made man on the earth. And the Lord said He would destroy the whole earth on account of the wickedness that existed in it. But Noah did not follow the bad example of those around him, he did what was right in the sight of God, and found grace in His sight. Noah had three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And the Lord said to Noah, "The end of all flesh is come. I will destroy the earth with all the men in it." But Noah and his family were to be saved. So God told Noah to make an ark of Gopher wood, 300 cubits long, 50 broad, and 30 high. Into this he and all his family went, taking with them seven pairs of every clean animal and fowl, and two pairs of the unclean, with sufficient food for all. Noah entered the ark when he was six hundred years old.

Then God caused it to rain upon the earth forty days and forty nights—the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened, the waters kept on increasing upon the earth until they stood fifteen cubits above the highest mountains. And all flesh that were on the dry land died. After the flood had lasted 150 days the water began slowly to decrease. In about six months more, the ark having by this time rested on Mount Ararat, Noah sent forth a raven to see if the lower land were yet dry. But the raven gave him no sure sign. He then sent forth a dove, but she returned because the

waters had not yet left the surface of the earth. He waited seven days more, and then sent her forth again, and she returned with an olive leaf in her mouth. He waited yet seven days and again sent forth the dove, but she returned to him no more. Then Noah knew that he might safely venture forth. The flood had lasted one year and ten days.

On coming from the Ark, Noah and his sons and their wives offered up a sacrifice of thanks unto God. And God said that the earth should no more be destroyed by a flood, and as a sign of this promise He set the rainbow in the clouds.

**Noah's Sons.**—After this Noah began to cultivate the earth, and he planted a vineyard. God gave to Noah the permission to eat of the flesh of animals. But He strictly charged him not to eat of the flesh that had been cut from the living animal, for this cruel practice had prevailed before the flood. God also forbade the crime of murder and suicide, and stated the punishment in these words, "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed; for in the image of God made He man."

Ham, one of Noah's sons, behaved so badly that he drew upon himself his father's anger; "cursed be Canaan (Ham); a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren." But Shem and Japheth did what was right in their father's eyes, and Noah loved and blessed them. Noah lived after the flood three hundred and fifty years. And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years; and he died.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Tower of Babel.

**The Oldest Nations.**—The tenth chapter of Genesis is a very important one, as from the names and places mentioned in it we can trace the origin of most of the nations of ancient and modern times. This is not the place to enter into a long examination of the subject; it will be sufficient to give a few of the facts which have been established by the study and research of modern scholars.

The descendants of Shem occupied the central portions of the great eastern continent of the world. They were divided into the following nationalities:—Hebrews, Assyrians, Sabœans, Lydians, Arameans, Mysians, &c.

The sons of Ham inhabited the southern portions of the continent, and spread themselves freely over Africa. From them sprung the various tribes of Africa; and also the Arabians, Babylonians, Egyptians, Libyans, Philistines, Phœnicians, and Canaanites.

The children of Japheth settled in the northern and western portions of the great continent. They gave rise to the Scythians, Medes, Greeks, Cypriots, &c. The larger portion of the nations of Europe are descended from this branch.

**The Tower of Babel.**—And the people said, “Let us build us a city, and a tower whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.” At this time the whole earth was of one language and used one kind of words. In spite of God’s promise, the fear of another deluge was strong in the minds of the people, and they resolved to guard themselves against a second destruction of the human race. In the course of their wanderings they came to the plain of Shinar, between the Euphrates and the Tigris, and here they determined to carry out their plan. They set about building a tower, the top of which was to reach to heaven, and which was to afford them a sure refuge in case of another flood. But God was angry with the people for their pride and want of faith, and hindered the building of the tower. The Lord confounded the language of the people, so that one did not understand the other’s speech. And the Lord scattered them over the whole surface of the earth, so they left off building the city, which was called Babel, meaning confusion of tongues.

As there were ten generations from Adam to Noah, so there were ten generations from Shem to Abraham, viz.:—Shem, Arphaxad, Salah, Eber, Peleg, Reu, Serug, Nahor, Terah, Abraham.

## CHAPTER VI.

### The Life of Abraham.

**Descent of Abram.**—Terah had three sons—Abram, Nahor, and Haran. Haran, who died in his father’s lifetime, had a son, Lot, and two daughters, Milcah and Iscah. Nahor married Milcah, while Abram took to wife his niece Sarai, who was ten years his junior. And Terah took Abram, and Sarai and Lot, and went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldees to go into the land of Canaan; and they came to Haran in Mesopotamia, and dwelt there.

**Abram’s Wanderings.**—When Abram was seventy-five years old God said unto him, “Get thee out from thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father’s house, into a land that I will show thee. And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a



blessing.” Without a murmur Abram broke up his household, and taking with him his wife Sarai and his nephew Lot, passed into the land of Canaan and sojourned there. Again setting out on his travels he arrived at the village of Sichem, where he built an altar and “called upon the name of the Lord.” By this is meant that Abram for the first time taught the inhabitants of Canaan the belief in the one true God, the only Creator and the Governor of the world. While at Sichem, God renewed his promise to Abram that his seed should become great and should in later days inherit the land in which he was dwelling. Abram next pitched his tent at Beth-el, where he again “called upon the name of the Lord.” After this Abram continued his wanderings, always going in a southerly direction.

Now a famine came upon the land of Canaan, and Abram went down into Egypt to sojourn there until the famine should cease. While dwelling in Egypt, Abram waxed very rich, and became the owner of many sheep and oxen and asses, menservants, maid-servants, and camels.

**Lot.**—The famine having abated, Abram returned to the South of Canaan. During the whole of his travels his nephew Lot accompanied him. Lot had also greatly prospered, no doubt through the help and example of Abram. In fact, so large had the flocks and herds of the two camps become, that no sufficient pasture in any one place could be found for them. Owing to this difficulty quarrels were frequent between the herdsmen of Abram and the herdsmen of Lot. This state of things was not pleasing to Abram, who was, above all things, a man of peace. And Abram said to Lot, “Let there be no strife, I pray thee, between me and thee, and between my herdsmen and thy herdsmen; for we are brethren.” He then asked Lot to choose which part of the land he would like to have for himself: “If thou wilt take the left hand, then I will go to the right, or if thou depart to the right hand, then I will go to the left.”

Lot chose the fertile plain of Jordan, and encamped near the wicked city of Sodom.

Again did God renew his promise to Abram, “I will make thy seed as the dust of the earth. . . . Arise and walk through the land in the length and in the breadth of it, for I will give it unto thee.” Abram now removed his tent to the plain of Mamre, which is in Hebron, and built there an altar unto the Lord.

## CHAPTER VII.

**Life of Abraham (continued)—The War of the Kings.**

**Chedorlaomer.**—At this time there reigned over Elam (a district in Persia) a mighty king named Chedorlaomer. He had conquered many princes, among whom were the rulers of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboiim and Bela, or Zoar, all cities in the Jordan plain. For twelve years they served Chedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they rebelled. The next year Chedorlaomer, having made a league with the kings of Shinar, Ellasar and Goyim, invaded the south and east of Canaan, and after gaining many battles, prepared to reduce the kings who had thrown off his sway. The five kings took up a strong position in the valley of Siddim, which, being full of slime pits, offered great difficulties to the enemy. But the plan failed, for the five kings were beaten in battle; many of their men fell into the pits, while the rest escaped to the mountains. Chedorlaomer then marched to Sodom and Gomorrah, which he captured and despoiled. He took for a prey all the substance of these cities, and seizing Lot and all his possessions, carried him away with him.

**Abram Rescues Lot.**—Abram learned from the mouth of a messenger, who had escaped from Sodom, all that had befallen. Hastily gathering together his servants to the number of three hundred and eighteen, he armed them and set out in pursuit of the victorious kings. Three princes of the land, Mamre, Eshcol and Aner, friends of Abram, assisted him with men. Abram made a rapid march of 130 miles to Dan in the extreme north of Canaan, and there came up with the enemy. Abram not only showed bravery in pursuing an army many times larger than his own, but also skill in his plan of attack. The four kings were overthrown, and driven another 50 miles as far as Hobah, to the west of Damascus. Lot and all his belongings were rescued.

On his return from the campaign, Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of the most High God, came forth and blessed Abram.

Although Abram had captured much spoil, he would not keep even a shoe-lace for himself, but restored all of it to the rightful owners; Eshcol Aner and Mamre taking a share for their assistance.

**Abram's Vision.**—After these events, the Lord appeared unto Abram in a vision, saying, "Fear not, Abram, I am thy shield and thy exceeding great reward." In spite of these repeated

promises, Abram's spirit was sad, for he had no child, and a servant in his house would inherit all he possessed. God now gave him the hope that he would have a son, and renewed His promise that his seed should be as numerous as the stars of heaven. And God gave unto Abram a sign meant to confirm His pledge. God told Abram to take a heifer, a she-goat, a ram, a turtledove, and a pigeon; to divide all but the birds, and to lay the pieces opposite each other. Abram faithfully carried out these commands. "And when the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram." And God showed unto His servant what would happen to his offspring; that they should be oppressed by a foreign people for 400 years, that the nation whom they served should be judged, and that in the end they should return to their land with great riches. God further said to Abram, "Thou shalt go to thy fathers in peace; thou shalt be buried in a good old age." In the same day the Lord made a covenant with Abram, saying, "Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt (Nile) to the great river, the river Euphrates."

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Life of Abraham (*continued*)—Birth of Ishmael— Destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah.

**Birth of Ishmael.**—Abram was still childless, though he had reached the age of eighty-six. Now Sarai had an Egyptian maid, whose name was Hagar, and whom she gave to Abram for a second wife. This act led to great jealousy between Sarai and Hagar, and at last Hagar fled from the house of Abram. But an angel appeared unto her, and told her to return unto her mistress. He further said unto her that she should bear a son, whose name would be Ishmael, because the Lord had heard her affliction. "And he shall be a wild man, his hand will be against every man, and every man's hand against him." Hagar returned to the tent of Abram, and bare him a son, whose name was Ishmael, as the angel had foretold.

**Abraham.**—Thirteen years passed away. Abram being now ninety and nine years old, the Lord appeared unto him, saying, "I am the Almighty God; walk before Me, and be thou perfect." Abram fell on his face in reverence. God again renewed His promise to make his offspring numerous. And the Lord gave him a sign. "Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be ABRAHAM, for a father of many nations have I made thee. And I will make thee exceedingly fruitful,



and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee. And I will give unto thee and thy seed the land of Canaan, and I will be their God. And thou shalt keep My covenant, thou and thy seed after thee. This is My covenant, Every man child among you shall be circumcised."

God also changed Sarai's name to Sarah (queen). And the Lord said, "I will bless her, and give thee a son also of her." But Abraham doubted, as both he and Sarah were now grown very old. God thereupon renewed the promise in these words, "Sarah, thy wife, shall bear thee a son indeed, and thou shalt call his name Isaac. And My covenant will I establish with Isaac, which Sarah shall bear unto thee at this set time in the next year." Then Abraham circumcised himself, and Ishmael, and all the males of his household.

**The Visit of the Angels.**—In the heat of a summer's day, Abraham was sitting at the door of his tent, when he saw three men travelling towards him. The patriarch, always ready to show kindness to strangers, invited them to rest and eat in his tent. The men did so. After the meal the travellers, who were angels, asked for Sarah, and being told she was in the tent, repeated God's promise that she should have a son. Sarah, who now heard the news for the first time, laughed within herself. One of the angels blamed her for this, saying, "Is anything too hard for the Lord?" Then the men rose up and set out towards Sodom, and Abraham went with them a little on the way.

**Destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah.**—Now the Lord was about to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah, because of their great wickedness. On making known His design to Abraham, the patriarch's grief was sore, and he feared, lest the innocent might suffer with the guilty. He therefore begged the Lord to spare the city if fifty good men could be found in it. God mercifully hearkened to the prayer of Abraham, and promised to spare the city if fifty good men could be found in it. But Abraham, fearing that such a number might not exist, asked further that the city might be spared if it contained forty good men. Again the Lord consented, and again Abraham sought to reduce the number, till at length God promised to spare the city if only ten good persons could be found in it. But, alas! among the thousands who dwelt in Sodom, there could not be found ten who deserved the name of righteous. And so the wicked city went to its fate.

The strangers who had partaken of Abraham's kindness, had a mission to perform. They were sent by the Lord to destroy the wicked cities of the plain. Two of them reached Sodom at even.

Lot, Abraham's nephew, who had learnt the duties towards the stranger from his uncle, pressed them to stay in his house overnight. The travellers accepted his offer. Before they lay down to rest the men of Sodom gathered round the house intent on harming the strangers. It was in vain Lot went out to calm their evil passions. The crowd "pressed sore upon him, and came near to break the door." The angels now pulled Lot within the house, and smote the men outside with blindness, so that they wearied themselves to find the door.

Then the angels told Lot that they would destroy the city next day. They therefore urged him to leave at once, together with his wife, daughters, and other relatives. As the morning dawned the angels hurried Lot to go at once, lest they should perish with the city, and because he lingered they actually drove him away. As they were going the angels said to him, "Escape for thy life; look not behind thee, neither stay thou in all the plain, escape to the mountains, lest thou be consumed." But Lot pleading that the mountains were too far off, received permission to take refuge in the little town of Zoar. No sooner had Lot departed from the doomed city, than the Lord rained fire and brimstone upon Sodom and Gomorrah, utterly destroying them. Lot reached Zoar in safety, but his wife, who had disobeyed the command of the angel, and looked back upon the burning cities, was changed into a pillar of salt.

## CHAPTER IX.

**Life of Abraham (*continued*).—Birth of Isaac.—The offering on Mount Moriah.—Death of Abraham.**

**Birth of Isaac.**—The crowning joy in the life of Abraham was the birth of a son borne to him by his wife Sarah. Abraham called his son Isaac. "And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, being eight days old, as God had commanded him." But now a fresh trouble arose in the patriarch's tent. Sarah saw Ishmael, the son of Hagar, mocking. "Wherefore she said unto Abraham, Cast out this bondwoman and her son; for the son of this bondwoman shall not be heir with my son, even with Isaac." But Abraham grieved to do anything so evil. Then God appeared unto him, and bade him hearken to the voice of Sarah, foretelling at the same time that Ishmael should give rise to a mighty nation. The next day Abraham gave unto Hagar bread and water, and sent her forth, and she wandered about in the wilderness of Beer-sheba. And when the water was spent, she cast the child under a bush, and went and



sat down at the distance of a bow-shot, saying "Let me not see the death of the child." And she lifted up her voice and wept. But God in His mercy heard her weeping and showed her a well of water, which was the means of saving her life and that of her son.

At this period Abraham made a covenant of peace with Abimelech, king of the Philistines, at a place called Beer-sheba.

**Abraham's Trial.**—Now God desired to prove His servant Abraham, and therefore told him to proceed to the land of Moriah, and there on a hill to offer Isaac as a burnt-offering. Abraham, without a moment's hesitation, obeyed the word of God. He rose early in the morning, and taking his only son Isaac, and a sufficiency of wood, set out for the place appointed. After three days' journey they arrived at the spot, and Abraham, having built an altar and arranged the wood, bound Isaac and laid him on the pile. While his hand, holding the fatal knife, was stretched forth, an angel called to him from heaven, and said to him, "Lay not thine hand upon the lad, neither do thou anything unto him, for now I know that thou fearest God, seeing that thou hast not withheld thy son, thine only son, from Me." Abraham, lifting up his eyes, saw a ram caught in a thicket by his horns, and Abraham offered the ram instead of Isaac. God blessed Abraham, saying, "In thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed My voice."

Nahor, the brother of Abraham, had married Milcah. They had several children, one of them being Bethuel. Bethuel also begat Rebekah, she was thus grand-niece to Abraham.

Sarah died in Kirjath-Arbah, being one hundred and twenty-seven years old. She was buried in the cave of Machpelah in Hebron, which Abraham bought for a burying-place of Ephron the Hittite.

**Abraham and Eliezer.**—Abraham was now old and well stricken in years, and the Lord had blessed him in all things. He had one fear, lest Isaac should marry a daughter of a heathen family. So Abraham called unto him Eliezer, his chief servant, and made him swear that he should not take a wife for Isaac of the "daughters of the Canaanites." "But thou shalt go unto my country, and to my kindred, and take a wife unto my son." But Eliezer said, perhaps the woman whom I select will not come hither. Then Abraham bade him trust that God would bring his desire to pass; and so the servant swore to do the command of his master. Eliezer, taking with him a goodly store of camels and presents, set out for the city of Nahor, in Mesopotamia. When he reached a well in the outskirts of the city, he prayed to God for direction, saying, that if any damsel came to

the well and offered to draw water for himself and his camels, this should be a sign that the damsel was to be the future wife of Isaac. Scarcely had he finished when Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel, came to the well, and offered to draw water for Eliezer and his camels. The pious servant offered thanks to God for His help; and, after laying the nature of his errand before Bethuel the father, and Laban the brother, of Rebekah, they agreed to the proposal of Eliezer that Rebekah should become the wife of Isaac. But the damsel's consent had still to be obtained. They asked her, "Wilt thou go with this man?" and she said, "I will go." So the caravan set out on its homeward journey, and Rebekah became the wife of her cousin Isaac.

Abraham took unto him another wife, and her name was Keturah. Abraham, having given the bulk of his possessions to Isaac, died full of years, being one hundred and seventy-five years old. "And his sons, Isaac and Ishmael, buried him in the cave of Machpelah." Ishmael had a large family of sons, whose names are mentioned in the Bible. Twelve of them were princes. He died at the age of one hundred and thirty-seven.

## CHAPTER X.

### Life of Isaac.

**Esau and Jacob.**—"And it came to pass after the death of Abraham, that God blessed his son Isaac; and Isaac dwelt by the well Lahai-roi." Isaac was forty years old when he married Rebekah. She bare him two sons, Esau and Jacob. "And the boys grew. Esau was a cunning hunter, a man of the field; and Jacob was a plain man, dwelling in tents." Isaac loved his first-born Esau, but Rebekah loved Jacob. One day, Jacob was cooking some lentils when his brother came home, tired and hungry, from hunting. Esau begged of Jacob a portion of the food. But Jacob would not give him any unless he received Esau's birthright in exchange. Esau agreed to this, and sold his birthright for a mess of pottage.

A famine now broke out in the land, and to avoid it Isaac took up his abode in Gerar, in the land of the Philistines. Here the Lord appeared unto him, and blessed him. Isaac tilled the land and became very rich, having many flocks and herds and servants. The Philistines envied him, and stopped up all the wells of water that his father Abraham had dug. He, therefore, to avoid strife, left Gerar, and dwelt in the open plain. Here he dug fresh wells.

Esau being now forty years of age, took unto himself two Hittite women for wives. This act caused great grief to Isaac and Rebekah.

**Jacob obtains Isaac's Blessing.**—When Isaac was old, his eyes grew dim, so that he could not see. He called unto him Esau, his elder son, and asked him to prepare him a meal of venison, so that he might bless him before he died. Esau took his bow and arrows into the fields to slay a deer and bring it to his father. But Rebekah had overheard what passed, and being anxious that Jacob should receive the blessing, she called him and told him how he should act. She bade him go to the flocks and take two kids. These she would cook, and then Jacob was to take them in to his father and thus receive the blessing. Jacob was willing to obey his mother, but was afraid that his father might find him out if perchance he felt him, for Esau was a hairy man, but Jacob's skin was smooth. Rebekah thereupon told him to put pieces of the skin of the kids upon his hands and neck, and dressed him in Esau's clothes. Thus prepared, Jacob carried the savoury meats to his father. And he said, "My father;" and he said, "Here am I, who art thou, my son?" And Jacob said unto his father, "I am Esau, thy firstborn; I have done according as thou badest me; arise, I pray thee, sit and eat of my venison, that thy soul may bless me." And Isaac said unto his son, "How is it that thou hast found it so quickly, my son?" And he said, "Because the Lord thy God brought it to me." And Isaac said unto Jacob, "Come near, I pray thee, that I may feel thee, whether thou be my very son Esau, or not." And Jacob went near unto Isaac, his father; and he felt him and said, "The voice is Jacob's voice, but the hands are the hands of Esau." And he discerned him not, because his hands were hairy, as his brother Esau's hands; so he blessed him. And he said, "Art thou my very son Esau," and he said, "I am." Having eaten of the food, Isaac blessed his son Jacob, praying God to give him of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of wine and corn. "Let people serve thee, and nations bow down to thee. Cursed be every one that curseth thee, and blessed be he that blesseth thee."

And it came to pass, when Isaac had made an end of blessing Jacob, and Jacob had left his father's presence, that Esau returned from hunting, not knowing what had taken place during his absence. He hastened to prepare savoury meat, and brought it to his father, begging Isaac to give him his blessing. And Isaac, his father, said unto him, "Who art thou?" And he



said, "I am thy son, thy first-born, Esau." Isaac hearing these words, trembled very much, and told Esau that his brother had been there before him and had already received the blessing. Then Esau cried with a great and exceeding bitter cry, and said unto his father, "Bless me, even me also, O my father." And Isaac said, "Thy brother came with subtilty and hath taken away thy blessing." But Esau cried and begged so hard that at length his father blessed him also, telling him that he should live by the sword, but yet he should serve his brother, "and it shall come to pass when thou shalt have the dominion, thou shalt break his yoke from off thy neck."

**Jacob's Flight.**—Esau hated Jacob for depriving him of the blessing, and resolved to kill him after their father's death. This intention coming to Rebekah's ears, she advised Jacob to flee to the house of Laban, his uncle, in Haran, there to dwell until his brother's anger should have passed away. Before setting out, Jacob received his father's blessing, and the command not to marry a daughter of the Canaanites, but to take a wife of the daughters of Laban. "And Isaac sent away Jacob, and he went unto Padan-Aram unto Laban, son of Bethuel the Syrian, the brother of Rebekah, Jacob's and Esau's mother."

Esau, seeing that the daughters of Canaan pleased not his father Isaac, took as another wife Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael, and granddaughter of Abraham.

## CHAPTER XI.

### Life of Jacob.

**Jacob's Dream.**—"And Jacob went out from Beersheba, and went towards Haran." At the end of his first day's journey he lay down to rest in the open plain, using a stone for his pillow. That night he had a dream. He saw a ladder stretching from earth to heaven, and angels of God were ascending and descending on it. And the Lord stood above it and said, "I am the Lord God of Abraham thy Father and the God of Isaac; the land whereon thou liest, to thee will I give it, and to thy seed." God further promised Jacob to protect him during his travels, and to bring him back to the country he was leaving. When Jacob awoke in the morning he was afraid, saying, "How dreadful is this place! this is none other than the house of God, and this is the gate of heaven." He anointed the stone upon which he had slept with oil, and changed the name of the place from Luz to Beth-el (House of God). Jacob made a vow that

the Lord should be his God, and that he would give to His service a tenth-part of all his possessions.

**Jacob with Laban.**—Jacob continued his journey till he reached a well in the land of Haran. While resting there, Rachel, one of the daughters of Laban, led a flock of sheep to the well to water them. Jacob made himself known to Rachel, and returned with her to her father's house. After dwelling there a month, Laban asked Jacob what wages he would desire for serving him. Now Laban had two daughters, Leah and Rachel. Rachel was beautiful, but Leah was not so well-favoured as her sister. Jacob loved Rachel, and told Laban that he would serve him seven years for her. Laban consented. At the end of the seven years he gave him Leah to be his wife instead of Rachel. Jacob, finding himself deceived, agreed to serve another seven years for Rachel. Zilpah and Bilhah, the handmaids of Leah and Rachel, were also given unto Jacob as wives.

Leah bare unto Jacob six sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar and Zebulun, and one daughter Dinah. Her handmaid Zilpah bare him two sons, Gad and Asher. Rachel was the mother of two sons, Joseph and Benjamin. Her maid Bilhah also had two sons, Dan and Naphtali. After the birth of Joseph, Jacob wished to return to his native land. But Laban was not willing to lose the services of so faithful a shepherd, and begged him to remain. Jacob agreed to stay with Laban on the condition that he was to receive as wages all the cattle, sheep, and goats, that were born speckled or spotted. Laban was quite willing that Jacob should stay on these terms, and found that his possessions increased under the watchful care of Jacob, his son-in-law. But Jacob prospered still more, and he "had much cattle and maid-servants, and menservants, and camels and asses.

**Jacob returns Home.**—The sons of Laban grew jealous of Jacob's well-doing; they spoke against Jacob, saying that all he was worth rightly belonged to their father. These speeches had effect upon Laban, who began to look upon Jacob with disfavour. This made Jacob resolve to return at once to Canaan. He spoke to Leah and Rachel, and gaining their ready consent, took the opportunity of Laban's absence to carry out his intention. Placing his wives and children upon camels, and driving his large flocks and herds before him, he set out on his way homewards. Three days after, Laban heard of Jacob's flight. In hot haste he gathered his relations, and hurried after the patriarch, and came up with him at Mount Gilead, after seven days' pursuit. Jacob was in danger of the Syrian's anger, but

the Lord appeared unto Laban, and warned him not to harm Jacob. When the two men met harsh words passed between them, but Jacob showed how for twenty years he had served Laban with faithfulness, although his wages had been changed many times. At length a covenant of peace was agreed upon, and a heap of stones set up as a witness, and called Galeed and Mizpah. Early next morning "Laban rose up and kissed his sons and his daughters, and blessed them, and Laban departed and returned to his place."

**Jacob meets Esau.**—Freed from one peril, Jacob had to face another. He was approaching the dwelling of his brother Esau, and dreaded the meeting which must take place. To calm his brother, he sent on servants in advance bearing a peaceful message. These returned soon with the dread tidings that Esau was marching towards him with four hundred men. Jacob was sore afraid, yet he set about calmly to make the best preparations he could. He divided his following into two camps, so that if Esau came upon one the other might escape. Then having offered up a fervent prayer to God, he prepared a rich present of sheep, goats, camels and kine, and sent them forward to meet his brother. That night after everything had been arranged, a strange event happened to Jacob. He was alone when a man appeared and wrestled with him till morning. The stranger, finding he could not prevail, struck Jacob in the hollow of his thigh and made him lame. Day breaking, the man wished to depart, but Jacob would not let him go till he had learned the stranger's name. He that wrestled with Jacob was no man, but an angel, and instead of telling his own name, he changed that of Jacob to ISRAEL (Prince of God) "for as a prince hast thou power with God and with men, and hast prevailed." The angel blessed him and departed. In remembrance of this event "the children of Israel eat not of the sinew which shrank, which is upon the hollow of the thigh unto this day, because he touched the hollow of Jacob's thigh in the sinew which shrank."

The meeting between the brothers was now at hand. Jacob beholding Esau's approach went towards him, bowing to the ground seven times. But lo! instead of hate there was love, for "Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell upon his neck and kissed him; and they wept." And so the brothers were reconciled after their long separation. Soon after they parted. Esau accepting Jacob's present returned to the land of Seir, while Jacob crossing the Jordan travelled almost due west unto Succoth. He then journeyed to Shechem,



where, having bought a piece of land, he pitched his tent, and raised an altar to God.

**Death of Rachel.**—But Jacob's wanderings were not yet finished. After clearing his camp of the idols his servants had brought with them, he set out and reached Beth-el, where he built an altar. Here the Lord appeared unto Jacob, and confirmed his change of name. And God said "Be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall be of thee, and kings shall come out of thy loins." Jacob, after a time, set out again from Beth-el, and when there was but a little way from Ephrath, Rachel his best beloved wife, died in giving birth to Benjamin. Her grave exists to this day. At length Jacob reached Hebron, where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned. He found his father still alive, but Rebekah had gone to her rest.

## CHAPTER XII.

### Life of Joseph.—His Captivity in Egypt.

**Joseph's Dreams.**—Of all Jacob's sons Joseph was the one whom he loved best, and, as a proof of his love, he made him a garment of many colours. But when the brethren saw this they hated Joseph, and could not speak peaceably to him. Joseph dreamt a dream and told it to his brethren. He thought they were all binding sheaves in the field, that his sheaf stood upright, while the sheaves of the brethren bowed down to it. Hearing this the brothers hated him still more. He dreamt again that the sun, the moon, and the eleven stars bowed down to him. He told the dream to his father and to his brethren, and his father rebuked him saying, "Shall I and thy mother, and thy brethren bow down to thee?" And the brethren hated him still more.

**Joseph sold into Egypt.**—One day the brethren went to pasture their sheep in Shechem, and Jacob sent Joseph to inquire after their welfare. When Joseph arrived at Shechem, he found his brethren had gone on to Dothan, and he followed them there. Now, when the brethren saw Joseph approaching, they made up their minds to slay him, and cast him into a pit; and, to hide their sin, they resolved to tell their father that a wild beast had devoured him. But Reuben, more merciful than the others, tried to save him, and he persuaded the brothers not to kill Joseph, but merely to put him into a pit, with the intention of taking him out again when the others had gone away. First stripping Joseph of his coat of many colours, the brethren put him into a pit. Shortly after, a company of merchants passed by, going

from Gilead to Egypt, and bearing with them balm and myrrh and other spices. Judah saw the means of saving his brother's life. He advised his brethren to sell Joseph as a slave to the merchants. Joseph was taken out of the pit, sold for twenty pieces of silver, and carried down to Egypt.

Reuben, who had been absent for a time, now returned to the pit, and, finding Joseph was not there, he rent his clothes. The brethren then killed a goat, and dipping the coat of many colours into the blood, sent it to Jacob, saying, "this have we found." Jacob at once knew it as Joseph's garment; and thinking Joseph had been killed by a wild beast he "rent his clothes, and clothed himself in sack-cloth, and mourned for his son many days, and refused to be comforted."

**Joseph in Egypt.**—On reaching Egypt, Joseph was sold to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, King of Egypt, and captain of his guard. The Jewish slave prospered in the house of his master, who soon made him overseer over his household. Shortly after, Joseph, although he had never done any wrong, fell into disgrace, and was thrown into the prison where the king's prisoners were bound. But even here he found favour, and was put in charge over his fellow captives.

It came to pass after these things, that the chief butler and the chief baker of the King of Egypt offended their master, and they were placed in the same prison with Joseph. They each dreamt a dream, and begged Joseph to explain them. Joseph replied that the explanation of dreams belonged to God, still he asked them to tell him their dreams. The butler dreamt he saw a vine, and the vine had three branches loaded with ripe grapes, and he pressed the juice into Pharaoh's cup which he held in his hand. And Joseph explained the dream to mean, that in three days the butler would be restored to his office and to the king's favour. Joseph begged the chief butler to think of him when restored to power, and to show his kindness by getting him released from prison. "For indeed I was stolen away out of the land of the Hebrews; and here also have I done nothing that they should put me into the dungeon." The baker then spoke. He dreamt he had three white baskets on his head, and in the uppermost there were all kinds of bakemeats for Pharaoh, and the birds came down and eat them. Joseph explained the dream to mean that in three days the baker should be hanged, and the birds should eat his flesh. And it fell out as Joseph had foretold: the butler was restored to his office, and the baker was hanged. "Yet did not the chief butler remember Joseph, but forgot him."



## CHAPTER XIII.

**Life of Joseph (*continued*).—Joseph made Governor of Egypt.**

**Pharaoh's Dreams.**—Two years passed. At the end of that time Pharaoh dreamt that he stood by the river. And there came up out of the river seven fat cows, and they fed in a meadow. Then there came up seven lean and ill-favoured cows, who ate up the seven fat cows; and Pharaoh awoke. He slept and dreamt a second time. This time he saw seven ears of good corn come up on one stalk. Then seven thin ears sprang up, and swallowed the seven good ears; and Pharaoh awoke. The next morning the king's spirit was troubled to know the meaning of his dreams. He sent for all the magicians and wise men of Egypt; but none could explain them. Then the chief butler told Pharaoh that while in prison a Hebrew young man, servant to the captain of the guard, had interpreted his and the baker's dreams in a way that proved true. Pharaoh immediately ordered Joseph to be brought before him. The captive was hurried from prison into the presence of the mighty king, who told Joseph he had heard of his skill, and asked him to explain his dreams. But Joseph, with native modesty, replied, "It is not in me; God shall give unto Pharaoh an answer of peace." Pharaoh then related his dreams. Joseph told the king that his dreams were one, and that God had repeated them to show Pharaoh what He was shortly about to do. The dreams foretold that there were to be seven years of plenty in Egypt; but that those seven years were to be followed by seven years of famine so severe, that they would cause the seven years of plenty to be forgotten. Joseph then advised the king to make good use of the years of plenty, by storing up an abundance of corn throughout Egypt. Pharaoh, struck with the wise counsel of Joseph, at once appointed him ruler over Egypt, second in power to himself alone. Pharaoh called Joseph by the Egyptian name of Zaphnath-paaneah, and gave unto him to wife Asenath, the daughter of Poti-pherah, priest of On. She bare Joseph two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim. Joseph was thirty years old when he explained Pharaoh's dreams.

And now began the seven years of plenty, when the land brought forth by handfuls. Joseph gathered up all the corn of Egypt "as the sand of the sea, and laid it up in storehouses." Then came the seven years of dearth over all the earth; but while the other nations suffered through the want of food, there was plenty of

corn in Egypt. And they came into Egypt to Joseph for to buy corn, "because that the famine was so sore in all lands."

**Joseph's Brethren in Egypt.**—The famine was sore in Canaan also, and Jacob sent his ten sons to Egypt to buy corn, keeping Benjamin at home with himself. The brothers presented themselves in due course before Joseph, who knew them, but they knew him not. Joseph resolved to try his brothers. He therefore spoke roughly to them, and called them spies. In vain the brothers told the Egyptian ruler that they were honest men only come to buy corn, and that they had left their youngest brother at home. Joseph pretended not to listen to them; but, at last, to prove them, he told them to send for their brother. After placing them in prison three days, he allowed them to depart, keeping Simeon as a hostage for their return. Joseph always spoke in Egyptian before his brothers, and, as they could not understand that tongue, an interpreter had to be employed. But the brothers spoke to each other in Hebrew; and when Reuben blamed his brethren, saying that this evil had come upon them through their ill-treatment of Joseph, the latter, who of course understood what they were saying, could scarcely restrain his tears.

Joseph provided his brothers with a good supply of corn, and placing their purchase money in their sacks, sent them on their way. On their return Jacob was filled with grief. He had lost Joseph and Simeon, too, he feared, but he would not part with Benjamin.

**Benjamin sent to Egypt.**—The famine, however, grew more severe in Canaan. The corn the brothers had brought back with them was nearly all gone. Jacob again bade them go to Egypt for more. But the brothers hung back. How could they face the lord of Egypt unless Benjamin were with them? Then Judah, the foremost of the brethren, entreated the aged patriarch to part with Benjamin, saying, "I will be surety for him; if I bring him not unto thee, then let me bear the blame for ever." At length Jacob yielded to the pleadings of Judah. He prepared a present for the ruler of Egypt, and sent double money to pay for both supplies of corn. He also gave Benjamin into their charge; and, praying to God to guard them all, sent them on their journey.

The brothers again stood before Joseph, who invited them to a feast in his palace. They were troubled in mind, for they did not understand why the ruler of Egypt should appear to take such interest in them. They sought the steward of the Viceroy's house, and explained to him how they had found the purchase-money in their sacks when returning to Canaan. This money they had brought again, besides other money to buy food. The

steward bade them fear not, and restored Simeon unto them. In the evening Joseph received them at a feast. He anxiously asked of the brothers if their father was alive. Seeing Benjamin, his true brother, his firmness gave way. His heart yearned towards him, and he was obliged to shed in secret the tears that gushed from his eyes.

**Joseph's Cup.**—The next day Joseph ordered his stewards to supply the brothers with the corn they required, to put each man's money into his sack, and to place his silver cup in the sack of Benjamin. The brothers loaded their asses, and set out on their journey homeward. They had not gone far when the steward overtook them, and accused them of stealing his lord's silver cup. The brothers, knowing nothing of the matter, declared they were innocent of the charge made against them, and even went so far as to say, that if the cup should be found in the possession of any one of them, he should be put to death, while the others should become slaves. But the steward replied that he would be content that the culprit should be made a slave, while the others should be blameless. Then the sacks were opened, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack. The brothers rent their garments with grief, and at once returned to Egypt. Joseph blamed them for their ingratitude. The brothers threw themselves upon the earth, and could speak no word. Then Judah, who had made himself answerable for the safety of Benjamin, exclaimed, "What shall we say unto my lord? what shall we speak? or how shall we clear ourselves? God hath found out the iniquity of thy servants; behold we are my lord's servants, both we, and he also with whom the cup is found." But Joseph replied that he could not let the innocent suffer for the guilty; "the man in whose hand the cup is found, he shall be my servant; and, as for you, get you up in peace unto your father."

Then Judah drew near, and in most pathetic words, begged that Benjamin might be spared. He said that their father was unwilling to let Benjamin go down to Egypt, and that should the brethren return without him, the old man would die of grief. He explained that he himself had become surety for his brother's safe return; and how, he asked, can I return to my father, "and the lad be not with us, seeing his life is bound up in the lad's life." He offered, therefore, to become the Viceroy's servant, so that Benjamin might return to his aged father.

**Joseph reveals Himself.**—Joseph, overcome by these moving words, could no longer restrain himself. He ordered all strangers to withdraw; then, bursting into tears, he told the brothers that



he was Joseph. The brothers drew back in dismay, remembering how cruelly they had treated him. But Joseph lovingly brought them unto him; spoke words of peace and of comfort to them; and told them that all they did was for the best. True, they had sold him into Egypt; but by that very act many thousands of persons had been saved alive. Then he wept over Benjamin, and kissed all his brothers. Loading them with presents, and sending numerous waggons with them, he bade them return to Canaan, and bring his father and their families down to Egypt. A joyous journey was that. They came to their father Jacob, and told him how they had found Joseph ruler over Egypt. "And Israel said, It is enough, Joseph my son is yet alive, I will go and see him before I die."

**Jacob in Egypt.**—Jacob, his sons, and all their households, set out on their way to Egypt. Arriving at Beersheba, God appeared unto the patriarch and assured him of His protection. At length they reached that part of Egypt called Goshen, which had been set apart for them. Here at length, after twenty-two years' separation, father and son were again united.

The patriarch and his family numbered in all seventy souls.

Pharaoh had given a willing consent to all that Joseph had done with regard to his family. Desiring to see the patriarch, Joseph brought his father, then 130 years old, into the presence of the king, and Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

The famine was not yet over: the Egyptians still had to buy corn at Joseph's store-houses. When they had parted with all their money, Joseph gave them corn in exchange for their land. By this means Pharaoh became possessed of the whole of the land.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### Death of Jacob and of Joseph.

**Jacob's Blessings and Death.**—Jacob's earthly life was now drawing to an end. Joseph, always a good son, visited his father, taking Manasseh and Ephraim with him. These Jacob blessed, laying his right hand on Ephraim, the younger, and his left hand on Manasseh, the elder. He also blessed Joseph. Jacob then called all his sons around him, to tell them what should befall them in the last days. Reuben should not excel because he was "unstable as water." Simeon and Levi should be divided in Jacob and scattered in Israel. From Judah should spring the future kings of the nation, and, greater honour still, the future Messiah should come of his tribe. Issachar should live at peace

in a pleasant land. Dan should give birth to one of the greatest of Israel's judges. Gad should be conquered, but should triumph in the end. Asher should enjoy the daintiest things of earth. From Naphtali should come the poet and singer. Joseph should be crowned with many blessings, "blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that lieth under." Benjamin should produce the soldier and hero. These words spoken, Jacob commanded his sons to bury him in the cave of Machpelah; then, yielding up his spirit, he was gathered unto his people. He had lived one hundred and forty-seven years.

"And Joseph fell upon his father's face, and wept upon him, and kissed him." The body was then embalmed and carried up to Canaan, amidst a great assemblage of mourners, Israelites and Egyptians. They buried the patriarch in the cave of Machpelah, having mourned for him seven days. Joseph and his brethren then returned to Egypt, where they lived in perfect peace and love.

**Joseph's Death.**—Joseph felt life drawing to a close. Calling his brethren around him, he reminded them of God's promise to bring them out of Egypt into the land "which He sware to Abraham, Isaac, and to Jacob." Joseph then made his brethren swear that, when their descendants left Egypt, they should carry his bones up with them to Canaan. "So Joseph died, being an hundred and ten years old; and they embalmed him, and he was put in a coffin in Egypt."

---

## PART II.

### FROM THE DEATH OF JOSEPH TO THE DEATH OF MOSES.

#### CHAPTER I.

**Oppression of the Israelites in Egypt.—The Call of Moses.**

**The Israelites in Bondage.**—After the death of Joseph, and all his brethren, and all that generation, the children of Israel were very fruitful, and increased so much that the land was filled with them. Now there arose a new king over Egypt, who knew not Joseph. Fearing that the Israelites might in time become mightier than the Egyptians, he resolved to deal "wisely" with them. So he set over them taskmasters to afflict them, and they built treasure cities for Pharaoh—viz., Pithom and Raamses. But the more they were afflicted the more they grew; so the Egyptians

increased their burdens, and made their lives bitter with hard bondage. To stop the increase in their numbers, Pharaoh ordered all the new-born male children among the Israelites to be put to death, while the daughters might be saved alive.

**Moses.**—Now Amram, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, had taken to wife Jochebed, also of the tribe of Levi. Two children, Miriam and Aaron, had been born unto them. Shortly after Pharaoh's cruel edict, Jochebed gave birth to another son; and seeing he was a goodly child, she hid him for three months. When she could no longer hide him, she made a little ark of bulrushes, and smearing it with pitch, placed the infant in it, and laid it among the reeds of the Nile. Miriam placed herself a little way off to see what would happen. Presently, the daughter of the King of Egypt came down to bathe. Seeing the little ark, she had it brought to her. "When she had opened it, she saw the child: and behold the babe wept. And she had compassion on him, and said, 'This is one of the Hebrew's children.'" At this moment, Miriam came forward and offered to find a nurse for the infant. Pharaoh's daughter consented, and the child was placed in the care of its own mother. The child grew, and he became unto Pharaoh's daughter as her son, and she called his name Moses, because "She drew him out of the water." Moses, thus reared in the king's palace, reached manhood; but, though he was trained at the royal court, he kept up a close intimacy with his oppressed brethren. One day he saw an Egyptian smiting an Israelite. In righteous anger he slew the tyrant, and hid the body in the sand. Shortly after he saw two Israelites striving. He wished to make peace between them; but the wrongdoer cried out, "Who made thee a prince and a judge over us? Intendest thou to kill me, as thou killedst the Egyptian?" Moses, finding that the thing was known, and also that the king was seeking his life, fled eastward round the head of the Gulf of Suez to the land of Midian, in Arabia. Resting by a well, he helped some shepherdesses to water their flocks. They proved to be the daughters of Jethro (also called Reuel and Hobab), priest of Midian. Moses dwelled with Jethro, and took his daughter Zipporah to wife. And she bare him two sons, Gershon and Eliezer. Moses was forty years old when he fled to Midian.

In process of time, the King of Egypt died. This event brought no relief to the oppressed children of Israel. Their burdens grew heavier, and they cried to God "by reason of their bondage. And God heard their groaning; and God remembered his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob."



**Call of Moses.**—Moses kept the flock of Jethro, and one day he led them to the mountain of God, even Horeb. And an angel of God appeared unto him in a burning bush, and he looked and beheld the bush burned with fire and yet was not consumed. The Lord spake unto Moses from the bush, saying that He had seen the affliction of the children of Israel in Egypt, and had come down to deliver them and to bring them to the promised land of Canaan. Furthermore God announced to Moses that He had chosen him to lead his brethren out of Egypt. But Moses, who was the meekest of men, did not wish to undertake this great work, and tried to make excuses. But God commanded him to obey, telling him that Pharaoh would not at first let the children of Israel go, but that in the end they should depart from Egypt with great riches. Moses still held back, but God gave him two signs to show unto the Israelites, should they doubt the divine mission of Moses: first, the rod that was in Moses' hand was changed into a serpent; and secondly, the hand of Moses became leprous and immediately afterwards healed again by merely thrusting it into his bosom. Moses made one more appeal: he complained that he was not fit to plead with Pharaoh because he was not eloquent. The Lord replied that Aaron, who could speak well, should go with him and should be his spokesman. Moses then yielded. He and his household at once returned to Egypt. Moses and Aaron gathered their brethren together, and told them that the hour of deliverance was at hand. And the people believed, and they bowed their heads and worshipped the Lord.

## CHAPTER II.

### **The Ten Plagues.—The Redemption from Egypt.**

**The Plagues.**—Moses and Aaron at length stood before Pharaoh, and gave him God's message. But the proud-hearted king scoffed at them, saying, "Who is the Lord, that I should obey his voice to let Israel go? I know not the Lord, neither will I let Israel go." The only result that followed was that the lot of the Israelites grew worse, for now they were not given straw to mix with the clay of their bricks. So they were compelled to seek for straw and yet to make the same number of bricks as before. The Egyptian taskmasters also reviled Moses and Aaron, saying that they hindered their brethren from working. Moses complained to the Lord that since he had spoken to Pharaoh the burden of His people had been increased. God re-assured him and bade him go again to Pharaoh and show him a sign that God had sent him. Moses was now eighty years old, and Aaron eighty-three.

The brothers once more stood before Pharaoh and demanded the release of their brethren. Aaron, to show that God had sent them, threw down his rod, which was instantly changed into a serpent. Pharaoh's magicians, upon this, threw down their rods, and they were also changed into serpents, but Aaron's rod swallowed their rods. Pharaoh still would not hearken, and God sent ten plagues upon the Egyptians. They were: 1, The water of the rivers and ponds turned into blood; 2, Frogs; 3, Lice; 4, Flies; 5, Murrain; 6, Boils; 7, Hail; 8, Locusts; 9, Darkness; 10, Slaughter of the first-born.

**The Passover.**—Before the last plague was brought upon the Egyptians, God instituted the Passover. The month of Nisan, or Oviv (green ears), was made the first month of the year. On the tenth day of that month the head of every Jewish family was to select a lamb of the first year without blemish. This was to be kept till the evening of the fourteenth day and then killed. The blood was to be taken and sprinkled on the door-posts of the houses; while the body of the lamb was to be roasted and eaten. The blood upon the houses was to be for a sign, so that the destroying angel should pass over those houses when he smote the first-born of Egypt. The anniversary of that event was to be observed through all time by the eating of unleavened bread.

**The Exodus.**—The children of Israel were ordered to prepare to leave Egypt at a moment's notice. The night arrived when God's final judgment was to take effect upon the stubborn king and his people. At midnight a cry arose throughout all Egypt, for God had smitten all the first-born, "from the first-born of Pharaoh that sat on his throne, unto the first-born of the captive that was in the dungeon." Pharaoh, calling hastily for Moses and Aaron, begged them to depart at once with the children of Israel. The Egyptians also pressed them to go. The Israelites at once set out on their journey, taking with them the dough they were preparing for bread before it was leavened—"their kneading troughs being bound up in their clothes on their shoulders." The Egyptians loaded their former slaves with many presents, "jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment."

Thus came to an end the four hundred and thirty years foretold to Abraham as the period during which his descendants should dwell in a strange land, and thus was the nation whom the Israelites had served "judged" by the Lord.

The Israelites, to the number of six hundred thousand men, and probably three times as many more women and children,

setting out from Raamses, marched in an easterly direction to Succoth. The nearest way to Canaan would have been along the shores of the Mediterranean Sea and through Philistia. But God would not let His people take that route, as they, from their long servitude, were not fit to cope with the warlike Philistines. Moses, not unmindful of the oath exacted by Joseph, carried the patriarch's bones up with him. For forty years they were borne by the Israelites through all their wanderings, until they found a final resting-place in the Holy Land.

From Succoth they journeyed still eastward to Ethan in the wilderness. "And the Lord went before them by day in a pillar of a cloud, to lead them the way; and by night in a pillar of fire, to give them light; to go by day and night."

### CHAPTER III.

#### Passage of the Red Sea.—Battle with the Amalekites.

**The Red Sea.**—The children of Israel now resumed their march in a south-easterly direction, and reaching the head of the Gulf of Suez, an arm of the Red Sea, encamped near Migdal. It had taken them three days to reach the sea. Pharaoh, already repenting that he had let the Israelites go, collected his army, and, with all the chariots of Egypt, set out in hot pursuit. The Israelites, finding themselves between the Egyptians and the impassable sea, were sore afraid and cried out unto God. But the Lord bade them be of good cheer. "The Lord shall fight for you, and ye shall hold your peace." Then, causing a strong east wind to blow, God divided the waters of the Red Sea. "And the children of Israel went into the midst of the sea upon the dry ground: and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left." The Egyptians pursued the Israelites; but, while they were in the midst, God caused the waters to return to their place; so the whole host of Egypt was drowned. "There remained not so much as one of them." Then Moses and the children of Israel sang a song of thanks to God, "saying, I will sing unto the Lord, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea." Miriam and the women, taking timbrels, answered the joyous song.

**The Israelites enter the Desert.**—Journeying south, down the eastern side of the Gulf of Suez, the Israelites entered the wilderness of Shur, and they marched three days without finding water. Reaching Marah they found water, but it was too bitter to drink; but Moses pointed out a tree to them, which, being cast into the



water, made it fit for use. Going still southward they reached Elim, which abounded in wells and palm-trees, and encamped there. On leaving Elim they entered the wilderness of Sin on the fifteenth day of the second month after they left Egypt. Here the children of Israel murmured against Moses and Aaron, saying, "Would to God we had died by the hand of the Lord in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the flesh-pots, and when we did eat bread to the full; for ye have brought us forth into this wilderness, to kill this whole assembly with hunger." In answer to this cry, God caused large numbers of quails to come up round the camp every evening. He also rained down manna from heaven for forty years until the people entered the land of Canaan. Each man was told to gather every morning as much manna as he required for his family. None of it was to be left for the next day. There were those, however, who saved some from one day to the next, and they found that it turned bad and bred worms. On the sixth day, however, a double portion was to be gathered, to serve for that day and the Sabbath, for none was to be found on the seventh day. At the same time the children of Israel were commanded to bake and seethe on the sixth day the food intended to be eaten on the Sabbath. The manna which was thus saved always kept sweet, and was fit for food. Those who went to look for it on the Sabbath never found any. God commanded Moses to fill an omer measure with manna, and to save it as a memorial of the way in which He fed his people in the desert.

Journeying still south and east, the children of Israel reached Rephidim, and encamped there. Finding no water to drink the people quarrelled with Moses, saying "Wherefore is this that thou hast brought us up out of Egypt, to kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst." The Lord hereupon told Moses to take his rod and to smite a rock out of which water should flow. Moses did so, and called the place Massah and Meribah, meaning "temptation and strife."

**Battle with the Amalekites.**—While still at Rephidim the Israelites were attacked by the Amalekites, who were descended from Esau, and who dwelt in the south of Canaan, and in Arabia Petraea. Moses ordered Joshua to choose out men to fight with Amalek, whilst he himself would stand on the top of a hill with the rod of God in his hand. Joshua led the fighting men of Israel against the enemy, whilst Moses, Aaron, and Hur went to the top of the hill. "And it came to pass, when Moses held up his hand, that Israel prevailed: and when he let down his

hand Amalek prevailed." The hands of Moses growing weary, Aaron and Hur held them up until the going down of the sun. Joshua defeated the Amalekites with great slaughter. God told Moses to write an account of these events in a book, and to rehearse it to Joshua, "for I will utterly put out the remembrance of Amalek from under Heaven." Moses built an altar and called it "Adonai-nissi," meaning "God is my banner."

## CHAPTER IV.

### The Decalogue.

**The Israelites at Sinai.**—While Moses was pleading the cause of God's people before Pharaoh, he had sent back Zipporah, his wife, and his two sons, Gershom and Eliezer, to their native land. But when Jethro, the father-in-law of Moses, heard of all that the Lord had done for Israel, and how the Lord had brought His people out of Egypt, he took his daughter and her children and travelled to where the Israelites were encamped. Jethro, although he was the priest of a strange religion, "rejoiced for all the goodness which the Lord had done for Israel;" and he praised the God of Israel, saying, "Now I know that the Lord is greater than all gods; for in the thing wherein they dealt proudly He was above them." Seeing how difficult was Moses' task in ruling and judging the whole people, Jethro advised him to choose out of the tribes able and righteous men to share the work. Moses took the wise advice of Jethro, and chose able men, who judged the people, "the hard causes they brought to Moses, but every small matter they judged themselves. And Moses let his father-in-law depart; and he went his way into his own land."

Breaking up their camp, the Israelites again travelled in a south-eastern direction, till they reached the foot of Mount Sinai. This was in the third month of their going forth from the land of Egypt. And now the Lord commanded Moses to prepare the people for the greatest event in their history—the giving of the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai. Three days were allowed to the people to get themselves ready for the dread event. The Israelites were told to sanctify themselves and to forbear going up the Mount, or even drawing near to it. "And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud on the Mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud, so that all the people that was in the camp trembled." The Lord coming down in His glory on the top of the Mount, spoke those words which form the basis not only of Judaism, but of every civilized form of religion.



**Moses on the Mount.**—When the people saw the thunderings and the lightnings they were afraid, and stood afar off; but Moses drew near unto the thick darkness where God was. He remained on the top of the mountain without food for forty days and forty nights, while God shewed him all the laws he should teach the children of Israel. God also gave Moses full directions as to the building and erection of the tabernacle, the form and material of the holy vessels, and of the priestly robes, &c. The three important festivals of the year—viz., Pesach, the feast of unleavened bread; Shovuos, the feast of the harvest; and Succous, the feast of the ingathering at the end of the year—were also appointed. At the end of the forty days, God gave unto Moses “two tables of testimony, tables of stone, written with the finger of God.”

## CHAPTER V.

### The Golden Calf—The Tabernacle.

**The Golden Calf.**—When the people found that Moses delayed coming down from the Mount, they grew uneasy; and going in a body to Aaron, they said, “Up, make us gods which shall go before us; for as for this Moses, the man that brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him.” Aaron commanded them to bring him the golden ornaments of their wives and daughters. With these he made a molten calf, probably like those he had seen worshipped in Egypt. When the people saw it they cried out, “These be thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.” Aaron built an altar before it and proclaimed a feast. And the people rose up early in the morning and offered burnt-offerings, and eat and drank, and rose up to play.

And the Lord commanded Moses to go down at once to the people who had so quickly turned aside from the right path, and had already begun to worship idols. “And the Lord said unto Moses, I have seen this people, and behold it is a stiff-necked people. Now, therefore, let Me alone, that My wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them; and I will make of thee a great nation.” But Moses begged and entreated the Lord to spare the people whom He had brought out of Egypt with such mighty wonders. He prayed the Lord to remember His promise to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, that their seed should inherit the promised land for ever. The prayers of Moses prevailed, and the Lord spared the people who had sinned so grievously.

**The People Punished.**—Then Moses turned and went down the Mount, and the two tables of stone were in his hands. But when he came nigh unto the camp and saw the calf and the dancing, his wrath waxed hot, and he threw the two tables down and broke them beneath the Mount. Moses severely blamed Aaron for his share in the people's sin. Taking the calf, he burnt it in the fire and ground it to powder, and strewing the dust upon the water, made the children of Israel drink of it. Then he issued a command that all who were on the Lord's side should come to him. The sons of Levi at once gathered themselves to him. And now a terrible punishment was to befall the wrongdoers. Moses, in the name of God, ordered the Levites to take their swords and to pass through the camp, slaying the sinners, and not sparing brother or friend. The children of Levi obeyed Moses, and slew of their brethren about three thousand men.

The following day Moses again besought the Lord to forgive the sin of His people, desiring that his own name might be blotted out of the book of life if the people were not pardoned. But God said, "Whoever hath sinned against Me, him will I blot out of My book."

**God's Attributes.**—The Lord then commanded Moses to lead the people towards the promised land, a land flowing with milk and honey. God further said that He would not be with the children of Israel in their journeyings, for they were a stiff-necked people. On hearing these evil tidings, the Israelites mourned; and to show their grief and submission, they stripped themselves of their ornaments. Moses prayed of the Lord not to withdraw His countenance from them—"for wherein shall it be known here that I and Thy people have found grace in Thy sight? is it not in that Thou goest with us? so shall we be separated, I and Thy people, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth." God listened to the words of Moses, and promised to shew unto him His glory.

The Lord commanded Moses to hew two tables of stone like the first, upon which God would write the Ten Commandments. Moses prepared the tables, and the following day he went up with them to the top of Sinai. "And the Lord descended in the cloud, and stood with him there, and proclaimed the name of the Lord." "The Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious, long suffering and abundant in goodness and truth, keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity, and transgression, and sin, and that will by no means clear the guilty; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, unto

the third and to the fourth generation." Moses hearing God thus speak, bowed down and worshipped. God at that time made a covenant to do marvels for Israel, to drive out the inhabitants of Canaan, the Amorite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite. He cautioned Moses and the people not to make a covenant with those wicked nations, and not to be led away by their worship of idols.

After another sojourn of forty days, Moses came down a second time from the Mount bearing the tables with him, when his face shone with the glory of God. Moses ever after wore a veil over his face, save when he was speaking to the people.

**Building of the Tabernacle.**—Moses told the people to bring free-will offerings for the construction of the Tabernacle. The children of Israel willingly brought offerings of gold and silver, and brass, and precious stones; fabrics of blue and purple and scarlet, and dyed skins of the goat, the ram, and the badger; oil for the light, and spices for the incense. All the skilled men gave their services to make the various parts of the Tabernacle. "And all the women that were wise-hearted did spin with their hands, and brought that which they had spun, both of blue, and of purple, and of scarlet, and of fine linen." The chief direction of the work was given to Bezaleel, of the tribe of Judah, and Aholiab, of the tribe of Dan.

When all things were prepared, Moses set up the Tabernacle on the first day of the first month of the second year from the going out from Egypt. Having erected the walls and arranged the coverings and the hangings, he set the altars, the laver, the candlestick, the ark, and the mercy-seat in their appointed places. Then a cloud covered the tent of the congregation, "and the glory of the Lord filled the Tabernacle."

## CHAPTER VI.

### The Priesthood—Nadab and Abihu.

**Aaron the High Priest.**—The work of setting up the Tabernacle having been finished, the Lord appointed Aaron and his sons to be priests, to minister in the service of the Most High. Aaron was ordained "High Priest," and very important duties with regard to sacrifices and public worship were allotted to him. On the day of his consecration a dreadful misfortune overtook him. Two of his sons, Nadab and Abihu, took their censers and offered incense before the Lord, "which He had commanded them not. And there went out fire from the Lord, and devoured them, and they died before the Lord." Aaron mourned the death of his sons,



"Then Moses said unto Aaron, this is it that the Lord spake, saying, I will be sanctified in them that come nigh unto Me, and before all the people I will be glorified. And Aaron held his peace."

The son of an Israelitish woman and of an Egyptian father blasphemed the name of the Lord. Such an offence had not been committed before, so there was a doubt what his punishment should be. Therefore, "They put him in ward, that the mind of the Lord might be shewed them." The Lord commanded that the blasphemer should be stoned in the sight of the whole congregation ; and this was accordingly done.

**The People Numbered.**—On the first day of the second month of the second year of the coming out from Egypt, God commanded Moses to number the men of Israel, "after their families, by the house of their fathers." Those only were to be numbered who were twenty years old, and able to bear arms. The number proved to be 603,550. The tribe of Levi was not included in this census, but was counted separately. It contained 22,000 males of the age of a month and upwards. To make up the number of the twelve tribes, the tribe of Joseph was divided into the children of Ephraim and the children of Manasseh. The tribes varied greatly ; the largest, Judah, containing 74,600 men fit for war ; the smallest, Manasseh, 32,200. The order in which the Israelites were to march in the desert was also settled by Divine command. The division led by Judah, and which included Issachar and Zebulun, was to march first. It numbered 186,400 men. Their place in camp was towards the east. Next came the division of Reuben, with whom were joined Simeon and Gad. It numbered 151,450. Their place in camp was on the south. Then came the Levites, bearing the Tabernacle, and all its sacred vessels. Next followed the division of Ephraim, which included Manasseh and Benjamin, and consisted of 108,100 men. These camped on the west. Lastly marched the division of Dan, together with Asher and Naphtali, to the number of 157,600. They pitched their camp on the north. So guarded, the Tabernacle was carried through the wilderness.

**The Camp Broken up.**—Moses had now prepared the people in every way for their long and toilsome journey through the desert, and had tried to persuade his father-in-law Jethro, who had returned to him, to accompany them and act as guide. At length, on the twentieth day of the second month, the cloud floated from off the Tabernacle, as a sign that they were to depart. So they broke up their camp, and travelled for three days in the wilderness of Paran. "And it came to pass, when the ark set forward, that Moses said, Rise up, O Lord, and let thine enemies be scattered ;

and let them that hate thee flee before thee. And when it rested, he said, Return, O Lord, unto the many thousands of Israel."

**The People Murmur.**—Again the people complained. To punish them the Lord sent a fire which burnt among them. The people now cried out unto Moses. Moses prayed unto the Lord, and the fire was quenched. The place was called *Taberah*, which means burning.

The mixed multitude who travelled with the children of Israel longed for meat to eat, and the Israelites also wept, saying, "Who shall give us flesh to eat?" They called to mind all the pleasant things they had enjoyed in Egypt, and complained that they had nothing to eat but manna. And the anger of the Lord was kindled against the people; Moses also was displeased. The divinely appointed leader broke down under this fresh proof of his people's wickedness. In touching words he craved permission to lay down the burden which he could no longer carry. "I am not able to bear all this people alone, because it is too heavy for me." The Lord hearkened to the cry of his faithful servant, and told him to choose "seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom thou knowest to be the elders of the people and officers over them; and bring them unto the tabernacle of the congregation, that they may stand there with thee; and I will come down and talk with thee there; and I will take of the spirit which is upon thee, and will put it upon them; and they shall bear the burden of the people with thee, that thou bear it not thyself alone." God further said that He would give the people flesh to eat, not for one day, nor two, nor five, nor ten, nor twenty days, but for a whole month, until they should sicken at it. Even Moses expresses doubt that the Lord could feed such a host with flesh in the desert. "And the Lord said unto Moses, Is the Lord's hand waxed short? Thou shalt see now whether my word shall come to pass unto thee or not."

**Seventy Elders chosen.**—Moses went out and told all these things to the Israelites. He gathered seventy of the elders and placed them round the tabernacle. The Lord caused His spirit to descend upon the elders so that they prophesied. But two of the elders, Eldad and Medad, who had remained in the camp, also prophesied. This was told to Moses, upon which Joshua, his servant, jealous of the honour of his master, exclaimed, "My lord Moses forbid them." But Moses showed his true greatness in his reply, "Enviest thou for my sake; would God that all the Lord's people were prophets, and that the Lord would put His spirit upon them!"

**Quails in the Camp.**—The next day God caused a strong wind



to blow, which brought up such a multitude of quails that they lay round the camp to the distance of a day's journey on each side. The people hastened to gather them, so that they might satisfy their lusting. But while the flesh was yet between their teeth, the anger of the Lord was kindled against them, and the Lord smote them with a great plague. And the place was called Kibroth-hattaavah, "because there they buried the people that lusted." The people then journeyed to Hazeroth and dwelt there.

## CHAPTER VII.

### The Spies.

**Miriam's Sin.**—Miriam and Aaron spoke against their brother Moses, because he had married an Ethiopian woman, and they said, "Hath the Lord indeed spoken only by Moses? Hath He not spoken also by us?" Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth. The Lord heard these words, and speaking suddenly unto Moses, Aaron, and Miriam, bade them go to the tabernacle. God then rebuked Aaron and Miriam, but praised Moses, whom He called His "faithful" one. When the Lord had finished speaking with them, behold Miriam was covered with leprosy. Aaron besought Moses that Miriam might be cured. Moses prayed to the Lord, and the leprosy was after seven days removed. The people then removed from Hazeroth, and pitched their camp in the wilderness of Paran.

**The Twelve Spies.**—At God's command Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan, taking one man from each tribe. The men went up and searched the land from Zin unto Rehob, and pushed on as far north as Hebron. And when they reached the brook of Eshcol they cut down a vine branch and one cluster of grapes of such a size that two men had to carry it between them, slung on a pole; they also gathered of the pomegranates and the figs. After searching the land for forty days they returned. They showed the assembled congregation the fruit they had culled, and praised the richness and fertility of the land which, they said, flowed with milk and honey. They, however, reported that the indwellers were strong, the cities walled round, and very great, and that the giants, children of Anak, dwelt there. This evil report frightened the Israelites; but Caleb, one of the spies, encouraged them, saying, "Let us go up at once and possess it, for we are well able to overcome it." The people, however, would not be comforted, but they lifted up their voice and wept all night. They murmured against Moses and Aaron, "Would God that we had died in the land of Egypt, or would God

we had died in the wilderness." It was in vain that Moses and Aaron, Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun, tried to calm the rebellious people. They were almost stoned for their pains. Again the Lord was about to destroy the whole people for their wickedness, and again Moses interceded for and saved them. But the Almighty decreed that none of them save only Joshua and Caleb should enter the promised land. The rest should die in the wilderness during the thirty-eight years' wandering, but their children should inherit Canaan.

The next day the people, having repented, were eager to set out towards Canaan. Moses warned them to desist, as the Lord was not with them. They disobeyed their leader's command, and departed out of the camp. And the Amalekites and Canaanites smote them and discomfited them to Hormah.

**The Sabbath-breaker.**—While the children of Israel were in the wilderness they found a man gathering sticks upon the Sabbath-day. The man was brought before Moses and Aaron, who ordered him to be put in ward, "because it was not declared what should be done to him. And the Lord said unto Moses, The man shall be surely put to death: all the congregation shall stone him with stones without the camp. And all the congregation brought him without the camp, and stoned him with stones, and he died; as the Lord commanded Moses."

## CHAPTER VIII.

### The Rebellion of Korah.

**Korah's Revolt.**—Now Korah the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, and Dathan and Abiram of the tribe of Reuben, raised a rebellion against Moses. With Korah were joined two hundred and fifty princes of the assembly, "famous in the congregation, men of renown." They complained that Moses and Aaron took too much upon themselves; that *all* the congregation were holy, and that therefore it was wrong for any man to lift himself up above his fellows. Moses was filled with grief at hearing these words, but he proposed a simple test, by which it might be shown whom the Lord had chosen "to come near unto Him." He bade Korah and all his company take their censers on the morrow, to put fire in them, and to stand before the Lord. Hoping still to move the hearts of the rebels, he reminded them how God had bestowed special favours upon the tribe of Levi. He blamed their desire to obtain more power than properly belonged to them. Moses then sent for Dathan and Abiram, but

they refused to go to him. The next day the whole congregation were assembled before the door of the tabernacle. Korah and his followers were there, each man with his censer in his hand. The spirit of mutiny among the Israelites grew so strong that the Lord waxed wroth and would have destroyed them all; but Moses and Aaron prayed on their behalf. Moses now bade all the people separate themselves from the dwellings of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram, who in defiance were standing at the entrance of their tents. Then spake Moses: "Hereby ye shall know that the Lord hath sent me to do all these works, for I have not done them of mine own mind. If these men die the common death of all men . . . then the Lord hath not sent me. But if the Lord make a new thing, and the earth open her mouth and swallow them up with all that appertain unto them, and they go down, quick, into the pit; then ye shall understand that these men have provoked the Lord. And it came to pass as he had made an end of speaking all these words that the ground clave asunder that was under them. And the earth opened her mouth and swallowed them up and their houses, and all the men that appertained unto Korah and all their goods . . . and they perished from among the congregation." And there came out a fire from the Lord and consumed the two hundred and fifty men that offered incense. Of the censers themselves broad plates were made as a covering for the altar.

**The People again Murmur.**—On the morrow, "all the congregation of the children of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron, saying, "Ye have killed the people of the Lord." Instantly a plague broke out among the people, and many were struck down in all parts of the camp. Again the heart of Moses yearned towards his people. He bade Aaron take his censer and hasten to make an atonement for the sinners. Aaron did so, and stood between the living and the dead, so that the plague was stayed. And there died of the plague fourteen thousand and seven hundred.

**Aaron's Rod Blossoms.**—God wished to give His people a further and lasting proof that He Himself had selected Aaron to minister unto Him. The head of each tribe was commanded to take a rod, upon which the name of his tribe was to be written, and to lay it in the tabernacle of the congregation. The name of Aaron was to be written upon the rod of the tribe of Levi. And it should be that the man whose rod blossomed was the one chosen by God, and so an end would be put to the continual murmurings of the children of Israel. The rods were accordingly laid in the tabernacle. And it came to pass on the morrow that



the rod of Aaron "was budded, and brought forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and yielded almonds." Aaron's rod was kept "before the testimony as a token against the rebels."

## CHAPTER IX.

### Death of Miriam and of Aaron.

**Death of Miriam.**—The Israelites now entered the wilderness of Zin, which they traversed for the next thirty-eight years, until the whole generation coming out of Egypt had perished. These wanderings over, we find the people again encamped at Kadesh, in the first month of the fortieth year from the Exodus. "And Miriam died there, and was buried there."

**Meribah.**—At Kadesh there was a scarcity of water. The people again murmured against Moses, saying, "Would God we had died when our brethren died before the Lord." The Lord told Moses to take his rod and bid Aaron to assemble the people. They were then to speak to the rock, and it should give forth water. Moses and Aaron gathered the people before the rock, and Moses exclaimed, "Hear now, ye rebels; must we fetch you water out of this rock? And Moses lifted up his hand, and with his rod he smote the rock twice, and the water came out abundantly."

And the Lord rebuked Moses and Aaron, in that they had disobeyed His command in striking the rock instead of speaking to it. This was their punishment, that they should not lead the people into the promised land.

The waters were called Meribah, because the children of Israel strove with the Lord.

**Messengers sent to Edom.**—Moses now sent messengers unto the King of Edom, asking permission for the Israelites to pass through his land. Moses promised for the people that they should not pass through the fields nor the vineyards, nor drink the water of the wells, but should keep to the king's highway, turning neither to the right nor to the left. But the King of Edom refused, and even threatened them with war if they tried to force a passage. Again Moses proffered his request, and again he was refused. The Israelites were compelled to choose another way, and travelling to the westward of Edom, reached Mount Hor.

**Death of Aaron.**—The Lord said unto Moses, "Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up unto Mount Hor. And strip Aaron of his garments, and put them upon Eleazar his son; and Aaron shall be gathered unto his people, and shall die there. And Moses did as the Lord commanded; and they went up into Mount Hor in the sight of all the congregation. And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments and put them upon Eleazar his

son; and Aaron died there on the top of the mount; and Moses and Eleazar came down from the mount. And when all the congregation saw that Aaron was dead, they mourned for Aaron thirty days, even all the house of Israel." The death of Aaron occurred on the first day of the fifth month of the fortieth year of the Exodus. He was one hundred and twenty-three years old.

**Hormah.**—Arad, king of the Canaanites, having heard of the matter of the spies, fought with Israel, and took some of them prisoners. Subsequently the Canaanites were overthrown at a place called Hormah, and many of their cities destroyed.

**The Brazen Serpent.**—The Israelites resumed their painful journey from Mount Hor by way of the Red Sea. They were thus compelled to retrace their steps, as the way through Edom had been barred to them. "The people spake against God and against Moses, Wherefore have ye brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness?" "And the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died." This punishment brought the Israelites to their senses. They humbled themselves before Moses, entreating him to pray to the Lord on their behalf; and Moses prayed for the people. God told Moses to make a serpent of brass and to put it upon a pole. "And it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass he lived."

**Messengers sent to the Amorites.**—Israel now sent messengers to Sihon, king of the Amorites, asking for permission to pass through his land. Again Moses promised that the people should keep to the king's highway. Sihon not only would not grant this request, but gathering an army fought a battle with the Israelites at Jahaz. "And Israel smote him with the edge of the sword, and possessed his land from Arnon unto Jabak." And Israel also captured many of the Amorite cities, such as Heshbon and Jaazer, and dwelt in them.

**War with Bashan.**—The people now "turned and went up by the way of Bashan; and Og the king of Bashan went out against them, he and all his people," and fought a battle at Edrei. "And Israel smote him and his sons and all his people, until there was none left him alive; and they possessed his land."

## CHAPTER X.

### Balak and Balaam.

**Balak and Balaam.**—The children of Israel continued their journey till they reached the plains of Moab on the eastern side of Jordan near Jericho. Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, had heard of Israel's successful war with the Amorites. Fearing



the fate of Sihon and Og, he spoke to a neighbouring people, the Midianites, complaining of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, and entering into an alliance with them in case of war. But he called another power to his assistance. He sent messengers to Balaam the son of Beor, who lived at Pethor in Mesopotamia, asking him to come and curse Israel. The fame of Balaam was very great. Balak seems to have believed in his power, for he said I know "whom thou blessest is blessed, and he whom thou cursest is cursed."

The elders of Moab and of Midian set out therefore on their long journey to Pethor, carrying with them large rewards. Having delivered their message, Balaam desired them to remain that night, and in the morning he would tell them what the Lord had spoken to him. In the night the Lord asked Balaam what the men were who were staying with him. Balaam replied that they were men whom Balak had sent to fetch him to curse Israel. And God said to Balaam, "Thou shalt not go with them; thou shalt not curse the people; for they are blessed." In the morning Balaam said unto the princes of Balak, "Get you unto your land; for the Lord refuseth to give me leave to go with you." So the men returned home.

But Balak would not be denied. Again he sent to Balaam princes more honourable than the first ones, with promise of great reward and promotion.

Balaam replied to them, that if Balak filled his house with silver and gold he could not go beyond the word of the Lord God, to do less or more. Still he asked the messengers to remain that night, that he might know what the Lord would say to him more. The Lord then appeared unto Balaam and gave him permission to accompany Balak's princes, but he was to say only what the Lord should put into his mouth.

The next morning, Balaam saddled his ass and set out for Moab. But God's anger was kindled against him because he went; and the angel of the Lord stood in the way to oppose him. Now the ass upon which Balaam was riding saw the angel of the Lord standing in the way with a sword in his hand; so she turned aside and went into the field, and Balaam smote the ass to turn her into the path again. Then the angel placed himself in a path in a vineyard with a wall on each side. When the ass saw the angel she crouched against the wall and bruised Balaam's foot, and he smote her again. The angel now went further off and stood in a narrow place, where there was "no way to turn either to the right hand or to the left." "And when the ass saw the angel of the Lord, she fell down under Balaam, and Balaam's anger was kindled,

and he smote the ass with a staff." The Lord now opened the mouth of the ass and she said unto Balaam, "What have I done unto thee that thou hast smitten me these three times?" The Lord opened Balaam's eyes and he saw the angel standing in his way with a drawn sword in his hand. The angel blamed Balaam for desiring to act contrary to God's will. Balaam acknowledged his sin and desired to turn back. But the angel said, "Go with the men, but only the word that I shall speak unto thee, that thou shalt speak." So he went on his way.

Hearing of Balaam's approach, Balak went forth to meet him, and brought him to Kirjath-huzoth. But at the first moment of meeting, the prophet told the king that he could only speak the word the Lord put into his mouth. Nevertheless, Balak did not lose hope; but on the morrow he took Balaam up into a high place dedicated to the worship of Baal, whence he might obtain a view of the people of Israel.

At Balaam's request, Balak built on that spot seven altars, and they offered on each a bullock and a ram. The word of the Lord came to Balaam, but instead of cursing Israel he blessed him, saying, "Who can count the dust of Jacob, and the number of the fourth part of Israel? Let me die the death of the righteous, and let my last end be like his." Balak, in anger, carried Balaam to another place, hoping he might curse Israel there. Again were the altars built, and the victims offered. Again the Lord put a word in Balaam's mouth, and again he uttered blessings. "He hath not beheld iniquity in Jacob, neither hath he seen perverseness in Israel; the Lord his God is with him, and the shout of a king is among them. . . . Behold, the people shall rise up as a great lion, and lift up himself as a young lion: he shall not lie down till he eat of the prey, and drink the blood of the slain." Balak, hearing these words, so different from what he had hoped, cried out, "Neither curse them at all nor bless them at all." Still he thought there might be one chance more. Leading Balaam to the top of Peor, the altars were built again, and the offerings made. Balaam did not wait this time for the divine inspiration; but, lifting up his eyes upon the people encamped below, he exclaimed, "How goodly are thy tents, O Jacob; and thy tabernacles, O Israel! . . . Blessed is he that blesseth thee, and cursed is he that curseth thee." And Balak's anger was kindled against Balaam, and he said, "I called thee to curse mine enemies: and behold, thou hast blessed them these three times." Balaam, however, reminded the king that he had said he could only deliver God's message. Balaam now broke forth into a further strain of pro-

phcey. He showed, in glowing words, the future greatness of Israel. "There shall come a star out of Jacob, and a sceptre shall rise out of Israel, and shall smite the corners of Moab, and destroy all the children of Sheth." Edom, Amalek, the Kenites, all should be subdued by Israel. A time, however, should come when Israel should bow the neck to Assyria; but, in the end, Assyria herself should be conquered by those coming in ships from the coast of Chittim (Cyprus). Then Balaam rose up and went to his place, and Balak also went his way.

## CHAPTER XI.

### **The People Numbered.—Punishment of the Midianites.**

**The People Worship Idols.**—While the Israelites abode in Shittim, they offered sacrifices to strange gods, being tempted to this sin by the women of Moab. At God's command, the ring-leaders were hanged: 24,000 Israelites died of the plague for this transgression.

One of the children of Israel, in company with a Midianitish woman, openly sinned in the sight of Moses, and in the sight of all the congregation, who stood weeping before the Tabernacle. But Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, filled with righteous anger, took a spear and slew them both. As a reward for this zealous deed, God established the priesthood in the family of Phinehas for ever.

**The People Numbered.**—Again the sum of the people from twenty years old and upwards was taken. They proved to be six hundred and one thousand seven hundred and thirty, or 820 fewer than at the previous census. Moses and Eleazar completed the numbering in the plains of Moab, by Jordan, near Jericho. Among them there was not a man of them whom Moses and Aaron had numbered in the wilderness of Sin, except only Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Joshua the son of Nun.

**Appointment of Joshua.**—The Lord bade Moses ascend the mount of Abarim, from whose summit he might view the land promised to the children of Israel. After he had seen it, he was to be gathered to his people as Aaron had been gathered. They were not permitted to enter the promised land, because they had transgressed God's command at the waters of Meribah. Moses devoutly submitted to God's command, but prayed that a fitting successor might be appointed. God told Moses to take Joshua the son of Nun, to place him before Eleazar the priest, and to endow him with some of his command, so that the people should obey him.

**The Midianites Punished.**—The evil wrought by the Midianites now called down divine punishment. At God's bidding,



Moses chose a thousand men from each tribe, and sent them together with Phinehas and the sacred vessels against the Midianites. "And they warred against the Midianites as the Lord commanded Moses; and they slew all the males. They also slew the king of Midian, and five tributary kings; Balaam also, the son of Beor, they slew with the sword." And they burnt all their cities and took very great spoil, which was divided among those who fought and those who remained in the camp.

**The Two and a Half Tribes.**—The tribes of Reuben and Gad possessed a great multitude of cattle, and the land in which the Israelites were now dwelling was well fitted for grazing. These two tribes therefore came to Moses, and requested that they might be allowed to remain where they were, and not be required to pass over the Jordan to the promised land. Moses was wroth with the two tribes, and said, "Shall your brethren go to war, and shall ye sit here?" He blamed them for trying to discourage their brethren from undertaking the conquest of Canaan. He reminded them that their fathers had been guilty of similar conduct, when the spies were sent from Kadesh-barnea. The Reubenites and the Gadites at once saw that Moses had not rebuked them unjustly. They therefore offered to build cities for their families and sheepfolds for their sheep in the land they desired to occupy, and then to join their brethren in crossing the Jordan and in subduing their enemies, adding, "We will not return unto our houses until the children of Israel have inherited every man his inheritance." To this Moses assented. He gave unto the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh the kingdoms of Sihon and Og. From the river Arnon unto Mount Gilead was given to Reuben; thence northward to the sea of Chinneroth belonged to Gad; whilst a more northward portion leading to Mount Hermon was possessed by the half tribe of Manasseh. The promise given by these tribes to Moses was faithfully carried out. They fought side by side with their brethren, and did not settle on their lands till the Israelites had taken possession of Canaan.

## CHAPTER XII.

### The Last Days of Moses.

**The Journeyings of the Israelites.**—In the thirty-third chapter of Numbers an account is given of the journeyings of the children of Israel, from the departure from Egypt to their arrival in the plains of Moab, near Jericho. These journeyings occupied forty years, and the Israelites pitched their camp forty-two times.

**Settlement of the Promised Land.**—Moses now told the



children of Israel what were to be the boundaries of the land they were about to possess. He then appointed Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, together with a prince from each tribe, to superintend the division of Canaan, which was to be by lot. The Levites were to have certain cities allotted them for their own use. Six cities of refuge were also to be built, three on the east of the Jordan and three on the west, whither the slayer might flee "which killeth any person unawares."

**The Repetition of the Law.**—The life of Moses was drawing to a close, yet he charged himself with one great task—to read to the assembled people the whole book of the Law. "In the fortieth year, in the eleventh month, on the first day of the month, Moses spake unto the children of Israel according unto all that the Lord had given him in commandment unto them." The place chosen was the eastern side of Jordan, in the land of Moab. Here, where had occurred many of the most important events in the lives of the patriarchs, Moses recited the past history of the people, and the code of laws which God had given for their government. This great work being ended, Moses commanded the people that as soon as they had passed the Jordan they were to set up great stones on Mount Ebal, to plaster them over, and to write upon them all the words of the Law. A portion of the people were to stand upon Mount Gerizim, to bless the people; and another portion were to stand upon Mount Ebal, to curse those who should transgress the Law.

**The Song of Moses.**—In a beautiful song Moses now exhorted the people to remain steadfast to God's word. He pointed out that He was their Rock and God. He recounted the ingratitude of the people, their frequent offences, and how God had always forgiven their sins. Lastly, he spoke prophetically of the future greatness of Israel. "Rejoice, O ye nations with His people, for He will avenge the blood of His servants, and will render vengeance to His adversaries, and will be merciful unto His land and to His people."

The Lord now bade Moses ascend Mount Nebo, in the land of Moab, from whose summit he might view the land of Canaan. God further told him he should die on the mount, even as Aaron had died on Mount Hor. The reason of their exclusion from the Holy Land is again stated, "Because ye trespassed against me among the children of Israel at the waters of Meribah-Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin; because ye sanctified me not in the midst of the children of Israel."

**Moses' Blessings.**—Moses prepared himself to obey the divine command. But first he gathered the people together, and blessed them according to their tribes. He prayed that Reuben might live

and not die, and that his men might not be few. For Judah he prayed, "Hear, Lord, the voice of Judah, and bring him unto his people: let his hands be sufficient for him, and be thou an help to him from his enemies." Levi should teach the Law for ever, and for ever minister in God's sanctuary; "Bless, Lord, his substance, and accept the work of his hands." He invoked the divine protection on Benjamin, and for Joseph "the precious fruits brought forth by the sun, and the precious things put forth by the moon." Zebulun should rejoice at his going out, and Issachar in his tents; "They shall suck of the abundance of the seas, and of treasures hid in the sand." Of Gad he said, "Blessed be he that enlargeth Gad." Dan was a lion's whelp. Naphtali was to be filled with the blessing of the Lord. He was to possess the west and south. Asher was to be blessed with children; "Let him be acceptable to his brethren, and let him dip his foot in oil."

**Death of Moses.**—The work of the great prophet and leader was finished. He went up into the Mountain of Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, and the Lord showed him all the land that the children of Israel were about to inherit. "So Moses, the servant of the Lord died there in the land of Moab, according to the word of the Lord. And He buried him in a valley in the land of Moab, over against Beth-Peor, but no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day. And Moses was an hundred and twenty years old when he died; his eyes were not dim, nor his natural force abated. And the children of Israel wept for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days. . . . And there arose not a prophet since in Israel like unto Moses, whom the Lord knew face to face."

---

## PART III.

### FROM THE DEATH OF MOSES TO THE CHOICE OF SAUL.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### The Spies sent to Jericho—Passage of the Jordan.

**Joshua takes command.**—After the death of Moses, the Lord commanded Joshua to prepare the people to pass over the Jordan. At the same time God promised to Joshua to be with him in all his undertakings. He bade him "Be strong, and of a good courage, for unto this people shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land, which I swear unto their fathers to give them." And again He said, "As I was with Moses, so I will be with thee; I

will not fail thee or forsake thee." Thus divinely encouraged, Joshua prepared the people to carry out God's wish. He desired them to lay in a stock of provisions for three days. He reminded the Reubenites, Gadites, and half the tribe of Manasseh of their promise to assist their brethren to conquer the promised land. The people promised a ready obedience to Joshua in these words: "Whosoever he be that doth rebel against thy commandment, and will not hearken unto thy words in all that thou commandest him, he shall be put to death."

**The Two Spies.**—The city of Jericho was situated on the western side of the Jordan, close to where the Israelites were about to cross. Joshua wished to find out its strength. So he sent two men secretly to spy it out. The men entered the city, and lodged with a woman named Rahab. It soon came to the ears of the king that the two Israelites were in Jericho. He sent unto Rahab, bidding her bring forth the men—no doubt intending that they should be put to death. But Rahab hid the spies among the flax on the roof of the house, and then told the king that they had left the city. The king's men at once set out in pursuit, and never stopped till they came to the fords of the Jordan. That same night Rahab went up to the men on the roof, and told them she knew that the Lord had given them the land, for their terror had fallen upon all the inhabitants. "For we have heard how the Lord dried up the waters of the Red Sea for you, when ye came out of Egypt; and what ye did unto the two kings of the Amorites that were on the other side Jordan, Sihon and Og, whom ye utterly destroyed." She then made them swear that as she had done kindness to them in saving their lives, they should show kindness to her and her family when the city was captured. The men swore unto her that she and her household should be spared, on condition that she kept the whole matter secret, and that she bound a scarlet thread in the window of her house, so that it might be easily known when the Israelites should enter the city in triumph. Rahab's house being built upon the walls of the city, she let them down into the open country by a cord from her window. The men returned to Joshua, and said, "Truly the Lord hath delivered into our hands all the land, for even all the inhabitants of the country do faint because of us."

**Passage of the Jordan.**—The next morning the people broke up their camp at Shittim and travelled to the eastern bank of the Jordan. At the end of three days the people set out to cross the river. By God's command Joshua arranged the following order of march. First went the priests, bearing the ark of the covenant. At a distance of two thousand cubits the people fol-



lowed. This space was left so that by clearly seeing which way the ark was going the people might know their way. The priests then boldly marched into the Jordan. As soon as their feet touched the stream, the upper waters of the river stood up in a heap. The lower waters pursued their course towards the Dead Sea. The bed of the river therefore became dry, and the whole host of Israel passed over on dry foot. While yet the priests were standing in Jordan's bed, Joshua commanded one man from each tribe to take a stone from the very spot where the priests were halting. This was done; and the men "carried them over with them unto the place where they lodged, and laid them down there." Twelve other stones did Joshua set up "in the midst of Jordan," as a memorial for ever of this signal miracle. All being finished, the priests left their station and also passed over. Immediately "the waters of Jordan returned unto their place and flowed over all its banks, as they did before." "On that day the Lord magnified Joshua in the sight of all Israel, and they feared him as they feared Moses all the days of his life." The passage of the Jordan took place on the tenth day of the first month. The people having encamped in Gilgal, Joshua erected there the twelve stones that had been carried out of Jordan as a memorial that the waters of Jordan had been dried up. The number of the two and a half tribes who passed over to help their brethren was forty thousand armed men.

## CHAPTER II.

### Fall of Jericho—Achan's Sin—Capture of Ai.

**Circumcision of the People.**—The Israelites who were born during the forty years' wandering in the desert not having been circumcised, God now ordered this ceremony to be performed.

"The children of Israel encamped in Gilgal and kept the pass-over on the fourteenth day of the month, at even, in the plains of Jericho." The manna which had fed them in the wilderness now ceased to fall.

A vision now appeared to Joshua. Lifting up his eyes he saw a man standing before him with a drawn sword in his hand. Joshua went up to him and asked, "Art thou for us or for our adversaries?" He replied, "Nay; but as captain of the Lord of hosts am I come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant. And the captain of the Lord's host said unto Joshua, Loose thy shoe from off thy foot, for the place whereon thou standest is holy. And Joshua did so."

**Siege and Fall of Jericho.**—Jericho was now closely



besieged by the children of Israel. At God's command the Israelites, accompanied by the priests bearing the ark of the Lord and blowing upon rams' horns, walked round the city once on each of six days. On the seventh day they walked round seven times; and as the priests blew the horns Joshua said to the people, "Shout, for the Lord hath given you the city." So the people shouted, and at once the walls that defended the city fell flat, and the Israelites entered and captured the place. They killed all the men and women that were in it, and all the cattle, but Rahab and her family they saved alive. They then burnt the city and all that was in it, only the gold and the silver and the vessels of brass and iron they put into the treasury of the house of the Lord, as Joshua had told them to do. And Joshua laid a curse upon any one who should attempt to rebuild the city.

**Achan's Sin.**—But one of the children of Israel had disobeyed the command of God, and had kept for himself a portion of the spoil. The wrongdoer was Achan, the son of Carmi, of the tribe of Judah. The anger of the Lord was kindled against the children of Israel, and misfortune overtook them. Joshua sent an army of three thousand men to capture Ai, a town to the west of Jericho. But the children of Israel, after losing thirty-six of their number, fled before the men of Ai, who pursued them unto the village of Shebarim. This defeat caused the hearts of the Israelites to melt with fear. And Joshua and the elders rent their clothes and put dust upon their heads, and prayed unto God. Then God revealed to Joshua the reason of Israel's defeat, inasmuch as one of the people had secretly taken and kept a portion of the spoils of Jericho. The next day Joshua endeavoured to find the culprit by casting lots. The lot fell upon the tribe of Judah, and finally upon Achan. Joshua begged Achan to confess. And Achan said that he had sinned against God, and had taken of the spoil of Jericho, and hidden it in the earth in his tent. Then all Israel stoned him till he was dead, and then buried his remains.

**Capture of Ai.**—Israel's sin being thus purged, God commanded Joshua to attack Ai again, and it should be delivered into his hands. So Joshua led an army against the city, and captured it by a stratagem. Dividing his forces, he made one part lie in ambush behind the city, while the other part attacked it in front. These, pretending to fly, drew the inhabitants of Ai after them in pursuit. The liers in wait instantly rushed into the city, and set it on fire. The Israelites, who were pretending to retreat, now turned upon their pursuers. The men of Ai were

thus caught between the two divisions of the Israelites, who slew every one of them. The cattle and the spoils of the city Israel took for a prey. And Joshua burned Ai and hanged its king on a tree.

**Ebal and Gerizim.**—Joshua built an altar of whole stones unto the Lord on Mount Ebal, and wrote upon the stones a copy of the Law of Moses. Then, placing half the people on Mount Ebal and half on Mount Gerizim, “he read all the words of the Law, the blessings and cursings, according to all that is written in the book of the Law.”

### CHAPTER III.

#### The Gibeonites—The Five Kings of Canaan.

**Stratagem of the Gibeonites.**—The remaining kings of the Canaanite cities, having heard of Israel’s successes, and fearing lest the doom of Jericho and of Ai should overtake them, formed a league to fight with Joshua and with Israel. But the inhabitants of Gibeon sought safety by other means. Dressing themselves up in old and faded garments, and taking with them mouldy provisions, they presented themselves before Joshua at Gilgal, asking to make a covenant with the children of Israel. The men of Israel said, “Peradventure ye dwell among us, and how shall we make a league with you?” But the Gibeonites replied that they had come from a distant land, and pointed to their worn clothes and stale provisions to bear out their story. “And Joshua made peace with them, and made a league with them to let them live.” Three days after the Israelites found out that they had been deceived, for by that time they had reached the Gibeonite cities, which lay to the south-west of Ai. Yet they respected their oath. The Gibeonites were saved alive, but were made for ever hewers of wood and drawers of water for the house of God.

**The Five Kings of the Amorites.**—The act of the Gibeonites in securing their own safety brought upon them the wrath of another powerful section of the inhabitants of Canaan—the Amorites. One of the most powerful of their princes, Adonizedec, king of Jerusalem, banding himself with the kings of Hebron, Jarmuth, Lachish, and Eglon, encamped before Gibeon, and made war against it. The Gibeonites sent to Joshua at Gilgal, praying for help. Joshua immediately answered the call, and a great battle ensued. The Amorites were defeated, and fleeing, were pursued by the Israelites. When they reached Azekah, “the Lord cast down great stones from heaven upon them . . . and they died; they were more which died with

hailstones than they whom the children of Israel slew with the sword." "Then spake Joshua to the Lord in the day when the Lord delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel, and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon; and thou, moon, in the valley of Ajalon. And the sun stood still and the moon stayed, until the people had avenged themselves upon their enemies."

Meanwhile the five kings had fled, and hid themselves in a cave at Makkedah, and Joshua had ordered a stone to be rolled to the mouth of the cave, and a guard set to prevent their escape. When the battle was over, Joshua ordered the five kings to be brought before him, and bade his captains set their feet upon their captives' necks. This was a sign that the power of the Amorites was broken. The kings were then slain, and their bodies hanged upon trees. Joshua pursued his victorious career, capturing many cities and putting their inhabitants to the sword. He smote all the country "from Kadesh-barnea even unto Gaza," and took all the land, "for the Lord God of Israel fought for Israel."

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### **Wars with the Canaanites—Division of Palestine— Death of Joshua.**

**Further Wars.**—A fresh league was now formed against the Israelites by the kings dwelling in the north of the Holy Land, headed by Jabin, king of Hazor. Among the confederates were Canaanites, Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, and Hivites. These nations dwelt about the Lake Chinneroth, and round the foot of Mount Hermon. Their hosts were as the sands of the sea-shore, and they had many horses and chariots. Joshua and his people fell upon them suddenly by the waters of Merom, and smote them, and chased them, until they left none remaining. Thus, king after king, and nation after nation, was defeated. Israel took possession of the conquered lands. At this period also Joshua cut off the Anakims, and destroyed all their cities. The total number of kingdoms overthrown by the Israelites was thirty-one. After this, "the land rested from war."

**Division of Canaan.**—The Lord now commanded Joshua to divide the land among the nine and a half tribes; the remaining two and a half tribes (Reuben, Gad, and half Manasseh) having chosen their possessions on the east of the Jordan. The tribe of Levi alone received no portion of the land; "the sacrifices of the Lord God of Israel made by fire are their inheritance, as He said unto them."

To Reuben was given the southernmost portion of the land



east of the Jordan. It was bounded by the river Arnon on the south, and on the north reached a little beyond the head of the Dead Sea. It was formerly the kingdom of Sihon.

Gad lay to the north of Reuben, and included Mount Gilead.

Manasseh was still further north, and extended to Mount Hermon. This was formerly the country of Og, king of Bashan.

The river Jordan was the western boundary of these three tribes. On the east they touched the desert.

The other tribes were thus placed, proceeding from north to south—Naphtali, Asher, Zebulun, Issachar, Manasseh, Ephraim, Benjamin, Dan, Judah, Simeon. To Caleb was given the city of Hebron. An end having been made of the division of the land, the children of Israel gave unto Joshua the city of Timnath-serah, in Mount Ephraim, “and he built the city and dwelt therein.”

God commanded the Israelites to appoint cities of refuge, “that the slayer that killeth any person unawares may flee thither; and they shall be your refuge from the avenger of blood.” And they appointed Kedesh in Galilee, in Mount Naphtali; Shechem, in Mount Ephraim; Kirjath-arba, which is Hebron, in the mountain of Judah; Golan, in Bashan; Bezer, in Reuben; and Ramoth, in Gilead, to be cities of refuge.

To the Levites also were given forty-eight cities with the suburbs thereof roundabout.

“Then Joshua called the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, and said unto them, Ye have kept all that Moses the servant of the Lord commanded you, and have obeyed my voice in all that I commanded you.” He then gave them permission to return to the east of the Jordan, where they had chosen to dwell. He bade them “take diligent heed to do the commandment of the Law” which Moses had commanded them, and to serve God with all their heart and all their soul. “So Joshua blessed them and sent them away.” The two and a half tribes set out on their journey eastward, and when they reached the Jordan they built there a great altar. When the children of Israel heard of it they gathered together at Shiloh to go to war with their brethren. But first they sent Phinehas with ten chiefs to inquire why the altar had been erected. The High Priest came up with the two and a half tribes in the land of Gilead and rebuked them for building an altar, and rebelling against the Lord. But they answered that they had not built the altar to offer thereon sacrifice, but as a perpetual witness that they and their brethren worshipped the same God, “that your children may not say to our children in time to come, Ye have no part in the Lord.” And the children of Israel were satisfied with the



**explanation** The altar was called *Ed*; "for it shall be a witness between us that the Lord is God."

**Death of Joshua.**—Now the land had rest for a long time. And Joshua waxed old, so he called all the elders of Israel together and exhorted them to keep the way of God. He warned them against serving idols; they should not swear by them, nor bow down to them, but they should cleave for ever unto the Lord their God. He then recounted the history of the Israelites from the time of Abraham until the day he was speaking to them. All the people promised faithfully to serve God and to obey His voice. "So Joshua made a covenant with the people that day, and set them a statute and an ordinance in Shechem." Joshua wrote these words in a book, and having set up a great stone as a memorial, sent the people to their homes. Then Joshua died, "being an hundred and ten years old." He was buried in Timnath-serah, in Mount Ephraim.

The bones of Joseph, which had been brought up from Egypt, were buried in Shechem, in the piece of land which Jacob had bought of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for one hundred pieces of silver. And Eleazar, the son of Aaron, died and was buried in Mount Ephraim.

## CHAPTER V.

### The Judges—Othniel to Deborah.

**Wars with the Canaanites.**—Although the land of Canaan had been divided among the tribes, its inhabitants had not yet all been conquered. The whole of the Book of Judges is occupied with the wars between the Israelites and the wicked Canaanites. At first Judah and Simeon agreed to help each other against the common foe. "And the Lord delivered the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand, and they slew of them in Bezek ten thousand men." They also captured Adoni-Bezek, and they cut off his thumbs and great toes; for he had thus treated seventy petty kings whom he had kept in captivity. The children of Judah had already captured the city of Jerusalem, and destroyed its inhabitants.

It was during these struggles that Caleb promised his daughter Achsah to whoever should capture the town Debir (Kirjath-sephir). Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, took it and obtained the damsel for a wife. The men of Judah next attacked the Philistines, and conquered the districts of Gaza and Askelon and Ekron. The other tribes also waged war with the idolatrous inhabitants, but did not always destroy them. Hence it came to pass that Israelites and heathens dwelt together in the same

town. This brought evil into Israel, for they were led to the worship of idols, and to follow those wicked practices which had brought God's judgment upon the original dwellers in Canaan.

An angel of the Lord rebuked the Israelites because they had made friendship with the inhabitants of the land, and foretold the troubles that would come upon them through their lapsing into idolatry.

**Idol Worship.**—This prediction soon proved true. After the death of Joshua and all that generation, the people forsook the Lord God of their fathers, and served Baal and Ashtarothe. And the anger of the Lord was hot against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of their enemies round about. Yet from time to time God had compassion on His people, and raised up among them Judges, who delivered them out of the hand of those that spoiled them. Then the Israelites would return to the worship of God, and remain steadfast during the life of the Judge, but on his death they would again return to their evil ways. One reason of the continual lapsings of the Israelites was the intermarriages which took place between them and the Canaanites. The Bible pointedly notes that this practice led directly to idolatry, with all its abominations.

**Othniel.**—The anger of the Lord was now kindled against His people, and He delivered them into the hand of Chushan-rishathaim, king of Mesopotamia, who kept them in subjection eight years. Then the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, and He raised them up a deliverer in the person of Othniel, son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother. "And the spirit of the Lord came upon him, and he judged Israel and went out to war." He rescued his people from the oppression of the king of Mesopotamia. Under him the land had rest for forty years.

**Ehud.**—Again the children of Israel did evil in the sight of God, who brought them under the yoke of Eglon, king of Moab. The Israelites served him for eighteen years, then the cry of their servitude rose to heaven, and the Lord inspired Ehud, a left-handed man of the tribe of Benjamin, to deliver his suffering people. Hiding a dagger among his raiment, and pretending he had a secret message to deliver, Ehud stabbed the king of Moab while alone with him in his summer-house. Summoning his people by blast of the trumpet, Ehud led them against the Moabites, defeating them with great slaughter. "And the land had rest fourscore years."

**Deborah.**—After the death of Ehud the children of Israel again fell into their wicked ways. The Lord sold them into the hand of Jabin, king of Canaan, the captain of whose host was named Sisera.

At this time Israel was judged by a wise and brave woman, a prophetess, Deborah, the wife of Lapidoth. She sent unto Barak, the son of Abinoam, telling him to march towards Mount Tabor with ten thousand men of the tribes of Naphtali and Zebulun, for that Sisera and his army should be delivered into his hands. But Barak refused to go unless Deborah went with him. Deborah consented, but told Barak that the journey would not lead to his honour, for Sisera would fall by the hand of a woman. So they journeyed together to Kedesh. Sisera had meanwhile gathered his host; "even nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people that were with him." The two armies joined battle at the brook Kishon, and all the host of Sisera fell by the edge of the sword, there was not a man left. Sisera himself took to flight, and drew near the tent of his friend, Heber, the Kenite, a descendant of Jethro. And Jael, the wife of Heber, went out to meet Sisera, and invited him into the tent. When he had turned into the tent, she covered him with a mantle, and gave him milk to slake his thirst. Telling her to conceal his presence in the tent, the tired captain gave himself up to sleep. Then Jael took a tent nail and a hammer, and softly approaching the sleeping Sisera, drove the nail through his forehead, even into the ground. So he died. Jabin himself was shortly after slain. To commemorate the great victory at Kishon, Deborah and Barak sang a beautiful hymn of praise unto God, "For the avenging of Israel" (Judges ch. v.). The song ends, "So let all thine enemies perish, O Lord, but let them that love Him be as the sun, when he goeth forth in his might." Then the land had rest forty years.

## CHAPTER VI.

### The Judges (*continued*)—Gideon.

**Gideon.**—The children of Israel fell again into their evil ways, and the Lord delivered them into the hands of the Midianites and the Amalekites, "and Israel was greatly impoverished because of the Midianites; and the children of Israel cried unto the Lord." God sent a prophet to rebuke them, and to point out the grievous sins they had committed, especially in worshipping idols.

**Gideon's Call.**—One day Gideon, son of Joash, the Abi-ezrite, was threshing wheat by a wine-press to hide it from the Midianites, when an angel of God appeared unto him, saying, "The Lord is with thee, thou mighty man of valour." Gideon replied, "If the Lord be with us, why then is all this befallen us?" Then the Lord told him that he had been chosen to deliver Israel



from the yoke of the Midianites. Gideon asked, "Wherewith shall I save Israel? Behold my family is poor in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house." He further asked for a sign of the truth of the prediction. Then hastening to prepare a meal for the stranger, he brought forth unleavened cake, and flesh, and broth, and placed them under an oak. Then the angel of the Lord touched the food with his staff, and there rose up a great fire and consumed it; and the angel disappeared. Gideon built an altar on the spot, and called it Adonai-shalom, "the Lord send peace." The same night the Lord told Gideon to throw down the altar of Baal, and cut down its grove, and also to build an altar unto the true God, and to offer a bullock upon it. Gideon, taking with him ten men of his servants, did as the Lord commanded. When the men of the city arose next morning and found that their altar had been destroyed, they called unto Joash to bring forth his son, that he might die. But Joash merely replied, "Why will ye plead for Baal? . . . If he be a god, let him plead for himself." And Joash called his son "Jerubbaal," meaning "Let Baal plead against him."

**Gideon's Signs.**—The Midianites and Amalekites gathered themselves together to contend with Israel in the valley of Jezreel. Gideon sent messengers to the tribes of Manasseh, Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali, summoning them to meet their enemies. They obeyed the call. Now Gideon asked a sign of God that Israel would be saved. He placed a fleece of wool upon the floor, saying, "If the dew be on the fleece only and it be dry upon all the earth beside, then shall I know that thou wilt save Israel by mine hand, as thou hast said. And it was so; for he rose up early on the morrow, and thrust the fleece together, and wringed the dew out of the fleece, a bowl full of water." Then Gideon entreated the Lord not to be angry while he begged another sign. Again laying a fleece on the ground, he asked that it might be dry, while upon all the ground there should be dew, and again the prayed-for sign was vouchsafed.

The Lord said unto Gideon that the people he had gathered were too many to overcome the Midianites, lest they should boast "Mine own hand hath saved me." Gideon sent away all who were afraid of the coming battle to the number of twenty-two thousand, keeping only ten thousand with him. But the Israelites were still too many. God told Gideon to lead the people to a brook, and to reject all those who drank by lapping like dogs, or by going down upon their knees. There then remained but three hundred men, who were to take part in the actual contest.



That same night the Lord told Gideon to attack the Midianites, for they should be delivered into his hand; but if he were afraid to join battle with them, that he and his servant Phurah should draw near the hostile host and overhear their speech. Gideon and his servant approached the camp of the Midianites, and heard one telling his neighbour he had dreamed that "a cake of barley bread tumbled into the host of Midian, and came into a tent and smote it that it fell, and overturned it, that the tent lay along." The other answered, "This is nothing else save the sword of Gideon, the son of Joash, a man of Israel: for into his hand hath God delivered Midian and all the host."

Gideon accepted the omen. He first offered up a prayer to God; then, returning to his camp, he divided his three hundred men into three companies, and he gave every man a trumpet, and a pitcher with a lighted lamp in it. Then he told them to watch him, and to do whatever they saw him do. He further told them to blow their trumpets when he blew his, and to cry out, "The sword of the Lord and of Gideon." So Gideon and his little army stood round the enemy's camp, and, at the signal, broke the pitchers so that the lights from the lamps flashed out all at once. Then they blew their trumpets and shouted their battle cry. The Midianites, roused so suddenly from their sleep, were thrown into confusion, and turned their swords against each other. And all fled in the greatest haste. Then Gideon sent to Naphtali, Asher, Manasseh and Ephraim to join in the pursuit, and many of the Midianites were killed.

The Ephraimites also captured and slew Oreb and Zeeb, two princes of the Midianites.

## CHAPTER VII.

### **The Judges—Gideon (*continued*)—Abimelech—Tola—Jair.**

**The Quarrel with Ephraim.**—The men of Ephraim quarrelled with Gideon for not calling them to join in his war against the Midianites. But Gideon wisely turned away their anger by saying to them, "What have I done in comparison with you? Is not the gleanings of the grapes of Ephraim better than the vintage of Abi-ezer?" By these words he led them to believe that in his opinion the most insignificant of the men of Ephraim were of more esteem than the chief men of Abi-ezer.

The pursuit of the Midianites by Gideon and his three hundred still continued. Gideon and his men were faint with their toil, and coming to the town of Succoth, asked the inhabitants for food. But the men of Succoth refused aid to the

Israelites, and mocked them. So also did the inhabitants of Penuel. Gideon threatened them both with punishment, and having at length captured the Midianitish kings he returned, and kept his word. He flogged the elders of Succoth with briers, and threw down the tower of Penuel.

**Gideon Refuses to Rule.**—"Then the men of Israel said unto Gideon, Rule thou over us, both thou, and thy son, and thy son's son also." "And Gideon said unto them, I will not rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you; the Lord shall rule over you."

Gideon, however, begged that every man should give him the ear-rings captured from their enemies. The people willingly gave them, and they weighed a thousand shekels of gold. With them Gideon made a golden ephod, and placed it in his city, and the people worshipped it, and it became a snare to Gideon and his house, for it led them into the wicked practices of idolatry.

**Death of Gideon.**—The land now rested forty years. And Gideon died in a good old age, and was buried in Ophrah. Then the people again went astray, and worshipped Baalim, and remembered not the Lord their God, and showed no kindness to the house of Gideon.

**Abimelech**, one of the sons of Gideon, was desirous of succeeding to his father's position. He joined himself with his maternal relations, and with the inhabitants of Shechem. Having gathered a following, he proceeded to his father's house and slew his seventy brothers "upon one stone." But Jotham, the youngest son of Gideon, was left alive, for he had hidden himself. Then Abimelech was made king by the plain of the pillar in Shechem.

**Jotham's Parable.**—When Jotham heard this, he went to the top of Mount Gerizim, and spoke a parable to the Shechemites. He said that the trees wanted a king to rule over them. They accordingly asked in turn the olive, the fig, and the vine; but all these declined the honour. Then they asked the bramble, which replied, "If in truth ye anoint me king over you, then come and put your trust in my shadow; and if not, let fire come out of the bramble and devour the cedars of Lebanon." He then reminded them of all that his father Gideon had wrought on their behalf: how he had risked his life to save them from their enemies, in return for which they had slain his seventy sons. Lastly, he said, "If ye then have dealt truly and sincerely with Jerubbaal (Gideon) and with his house this day, then rejoice ye in Abimelech, and let him also rejoice in you. But if not, let fire come out from Abimelech, and devour the men of Shechem, and the house of Millo; and let fire come out from the men of Shechem and from

the house of Millo, and devour Abimelech." Then Jotham fled and dwelt in Beer, for fear of Abimelech, his brother.

**War with Shechem.**—Three years passed, and the warning of Jotham came to pass. The friendship, stained with crime, that existed between Abimelech and the Shechemites was broken. The latter chose for their leader Gaal, the son of Ebed, who defied Abimelech and his power. A war ensued, in which the people of Shechem were routed. A thousand of them, men and women, took refuge in the tower of Shechem, and were there burned to death by order of Abimelech. The victor now besieged Thebez; and while attacking a tower in which the inhabitants had taken refuge, a woman threw a piece of millstone on Abimelech's head, so that he died.

Tola, the son of Puah, of the tribe of Issachar, judged Israel for twenty and three years. He dwelt in Shamir, in Mount Ephraim.

Jair, a Gileadite, next judged Israel for twenty years. After his death the children of Israel, having again resorted to the worship of idols, were oppressed by the Ammonites. In their distress they prayed unto God; but no help came. The Lord rebuked them for their many backslidings, and bade them cry unto the gods they had chosen to deliver them in the time of their tribulation. Then the people repented, and put away the strange gods from their midst, and served the Lord, "and His soul was grieved for the misery of Israel." The children of Ammon gathered an army and encamped in Gilead, and the Israelites assembled and encamped in Mizpeh. And the people and princes of Gilead said one to another, "What man is he that will begin to fight against the children of Ammon? He shall be head over all the inhabitants of Gilead."

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Jephthah—Samson.

**Jephthah.**—Now Jephthah was a mighty man of valour. His father, Gilead, had many sons, and when they were grown up, they thrust Jephthah from his father's house. So he dwelt in the land of Tob, and gathered men round him. When the Ammonites made war against Israel, the men of Gilead begged Jephthah to become their leader. He refused unless they promised to recognize him as their chief. This they agreed to do. Then Jephthah sent messengers to the king of Ammon, asking why he had invaded the land. The king replied that the land was his, and that the Israelites had taken it away by force when they



had come out of Egypt. But Jephthah answered that God had taken the land from the Ammonites because of their cruelty to the children of Israel during their travels in the wilderness. The messages were of no avail, and Jephthah led his people to do battle with the Ammonites.

**Jephthah's Vow.**—And Jephthah vowed a vow, saying that if the Ammonites were defeated, then whatever came forth from his house to meet him on his return should be the Lord's, and should be offered as a burnt-offering; then leading his men to the attack, the Ammonites were overthrown with a very great slaughter. On his victorious return to his house, behold his daughter came forth to meet him "with timbrels and dances; and she was his only child; beside her he had neither son nor daughter." When Jephthah saw her, his joy was at once turned to mourning. He rent his clothes and told his child of the vow he had made. But the loving daughter heard the terrible words with pious resignation, saying, "My father, if thou hast opened thy mouth unto the Lord, do to me according to that which hath proceeded out of thy mouth." One favour she asked, that she might bewail her fate upon the mountains for two months. At the end of that time her father did with her according to the vow which he had vowed.

**Quarrel with the Ephraimites.**—The men of Ephraim now quarrelled with Jephthah and the men of Gilead, because they had not been called upon to assist in the war against Ammon. A battle ensued in which the Ephraimites were overthrown. The Gileadites then seized the fords over the Jordan, and slew the Ephraimites as they attempted to pass over. The Ephraimites not being able to pronounce the word "Shibboleth," this was given to them as a test. So there fell of the men of Ephraim that day forty and two thousand. After ruling over Israel for six years, Jephthah died and was buried in one of the cities of Gilead.

**Ibzan.**—Israel was then judged for seven years by Ibzan of Beth-lehem.

**Elon.**—The next judge was Elon, of the tribe of Zebulun. He ruled for ten years.

**Abdon,** the son of Hillel, then judged the land for eight years. Israel now fell under the power of the Philistines, who oppressed them for forty years.

**Samson.**—Now there was a certain man of the tribe of Dan, named Manoah, whose wife bare him no children. One day an angel of the Lord appeared to the woman and told her she should have a son. He bade her not to drink wine nor strong



drink, and not to eat any unclean thing. For the child was to be a Nazarite\* unto God from his birth, and he was destined to deliver Israel from the Philistines. The woman told her husband. Then Manoah entreated the Lord that the angel might come again and teach him how the promised child should be reared. God listened to the voice of Manoah, and the angel appeared unto the woman and her husband and repeated his commands. Then, when Manoah prepared a burnt sacrifice, the angel disappeared in the flame. In course of time the woman bare a son, and called his name Samson, "and the child grew, and the Lord blessed him."

**Samson's Riddle.**—Although he was to prove their greatest enemy, Samson at first was friendly with the Philistines. Going to Timnath he saw there one of their women, and desired to have her to wife. His father and mother were vexed at his choice, wishing that he should marry an Israelitess. But Samson was not to be moved; so he and his parents went down to Timnath. On the way a young lion came out and roared at Samson. The spirit of the Lord came mightily upon the Nazarite, and he rent the lion as one would rend a kid. Journeying down on a later day to marry the woman of Timnath, he turned aside to view the carcase of the lion and, behold, a swarm of bees had settled in it. So he took of the honey and went on eating. The usual wedding-feast was held. Then Samson asked a riddle of the thirty Philistines who had been appointed his companions, the forfeit by the losing side to be thirty cloths, and thirty changes of garment. This was the riddle, "Out of the eater came forth meat, and out of the strong came forth sweetness;" and seven days were given for solving it. At the end of three days the Philistines went to Samson's wife pressing her to find out and tell them the answer, and threatening her with death by fire if she refused. Samson's wife wept before him, entreating him to tell her the answer. As she wept day by day Samson at last yielded. The woman told the Philistines, and on the seventh day they spake the answer, "What is sweeter than honey, and what is stronger than a lion?" Samson replied, "If ye had not ploughed with my heifer, ye had not found out my riddle." Going to Ashkelon he slew thirty of its men and gave their clothes to the Philistines. Then he returned in anger to his father's house, while his wife was given to another man.

\* A man who had taken upon himself the vow of a Nazarite was not permitted to partake of wine or strong drink, or to eat anything made of the vine tree, "from the kernels even to the husk." He was not allowed to cut the hair of his head, or to defile himself by touching a dead body. See Numbers vi. 1-21.

## CHAPTER IX.

Samson (*continued*).

**Samson's Exploits.**—Some time after Samson went to Timnath to see his wife, and found that she had been married to one of his companions. His anger was kindled against the Philistines. Capturing three hundred foxes, he turned them tail to tail, and placed a firebrand between each pair. Having set the brands on fire he drove the foxes into the cornfields of his enemies, so that they burned up "both the shocks, and also the standing corn, with the vineyards and olives." The Philistines in revenge burnt Samson's wife and her father with fire. This again roused Samson's anger, and, after slaying many of them, he went and dwelt in the top of the rock Etam.

The Philistines came up to fight with the men of Judah, and demanded that they should deliver Samson into their hands. Three thousand of the men of Judah scaled the rock of Etam, and having bound Samson with new ropes they brought him down. When the Philistines saw him captive they set up a great shout. But the spirit of the Lord came upon Samson, and he broke his cords, as if they were "flax that was burnt with fire." Then finding a jaw-bone of an ass he slew with it a thousand men. Sore athirst after his great work, he cried to God and the Lord clave a hollow place that was in the jaw, and water came out.

**Samson's Fall.**—Samson, being in Gaza, the inhabitants lay in wait for him all night round about the city, saying, "In the morning, when it is day, we shall kill him." But he arose at midnight, and taking the doors of the gates of the city, with the posts and bar, carried them up to the top of a hill near Hebron.

After a time, Samson loved a woman in the valley of Sorek, whose name was Delilah. The lords of the Philistines offered her a very large bribe if she would find out the secret of Samson's strength, and how he might be overcome. Delilah, yielding to the desire of the Philistines, begged Samson again and again to tell her wherein lay his strength. Samson at first mocked her by telling her that if he were bound with "seven green withs," he would become weak and as another man. When tied with them, he broke them as if they were tow touched by the fire. Another time he said that if he were bound with ropes that had never been used, he would become weak. When, however, he was so fastened, he broke them as thread. Again he told Delilah that if she wove the seven locks of his hair with the web, all his strength would depart. She did so, but he walked away with

the pin of the beam and with the web. But as she pressed him daily with her words, he, in an unlucky moment, "told her his whole heart," and said that he owed his strength to his being a Nazarite; and that if his hair were cut off he would become utterly weak. Delilah watched till Samson was soundly asleep: then, calling for a man, bade him shave off the seven locks of his head. Instantly his strength went from him; and the Philistines, who were waiting the event, seized him, put out his eyes, and bound him with fetters of brass. They placed him in a prison-house, and made him grind their corn.

To commemorate their victory, the Philistines prepared a great feast and sacrifice unto Dagon, their god. When their hearts were merry, they sent for Samson to make sport before them. The temple was crowded with men and women, the lords and ladies of the Philistines, to the number of three thousand. Samson asked the lad who led him to allow him to feel the pillars that supported the roof, that he might lean upon them. Then, uttering a prayer to God for help and strength, and that he might be avenged for the loss of his two eyes, he seized the pillars of the temple, and, bowing himself with all his might, brought the whole structure to the ground. Thousands were killed, Samson himself being among the number. He had judged Israel twenty years.

## CHAPTER X.

### Micah—Destruction of Gibeah—Ruth.

**Micah.**—There was a man of Mount Ephraim named Micah. He stole eleven hundred shekels of silver from his mother, but afterwards restored them unto her. She took two hundred of the shekels and had them formed into a graven image and a molten image, and they were placed in the house of Micah. Shortly after, a Levite on his travels came to the house of Micah, and was by him persuaded to remain there and act as Levite to his gods. "In those days there was no king in Israel, but every man did that which was right in his own eyes."

**Capture of Laish by the Danites.**—The tribe of Dan, wishing to enlarge their possessions, sent five of their men to search the land. They journeyed to Mount Ephraim, a district almost in the centre of Palestine, and came to the house of Micah. Resting there, they inquired of the Levite how he came thither; and the Levite told them that Micah had hired him to minister to his idols. Then the men begged him to inquire of God if their expedition would be prosperous. The Levite replied, "Go in peace; before the Lord is your way in which you go."



The men departed, and travelling to the extreme north of Palestine, noted the town of Laish as being easy of capture, since it was far from Zidon, the only town likely to give it help. The spies returned to their own country, and having reported all they had seen, six hundred Danites set out to capture Laish. Their way took them to the dwelling of Micah, and learning that there were in the house an ephod and teraphim, resolved to carry them away. So they entered the house and brought out the idols, and also persuaded the priest to accompany them. They had scarcely proceeded on their journey when Micah and his neighbours followed after them, demanding that the idols should be restored. The Danites refused to give them back, and even threatened to kill Micah if he molested them. Micah, seeing that they were more numerous than his followers, turned back home. The Danites, having reached Laish, captured the city, burned it, and put the inhabitants to the sword. They then built a city on the site and called it Dan, and dwelt there until the day of the captivity of the land.

**The Wickedness of Gibeah.**—A certain Levite, who dwelt on the side of Mount Ephraim, had a wife. After living with him some time she returned to her father's house in Bethlehem-Judah. The Levite went to fetch her home. Darkness overtaking them on the way, they turned for shelter into Gibeah, in Benjamin, and took up their lodging in the house of an old man. In the night the men of Gibeah ill-treated the Levite's wife so cruelly that in the morning she died. The Levite laid the woman upon his ass, and journeyed on to his home. He then cut the body into twelve pieces, and sent one to each of the twelve tribes of Israel.

**The Tribes Assemble.**—The dreadful act sent a thrill of horror through the land. At once the tribes assembled at Mizpeh, even "four hundred thousand foot-men that drew the sword." Then the Levite addressed them, and told them how sinfully the men of Gibeah had acted. Burning with anger, the tribes resolved to attack Gibeah. A tenth part of the men were chosen by lot to carry out the punishment against the wicked city. But the tribe of Benjamin took up the cause of Gibeah, and mustered an army of twenty-six thousand men to oppose Israel. Gibeah also furnished seven hundred chosen men.

**Benjamin Defeated.**—The children of Israel inquired of the Lord who should lead them to battle; and the Lord said, "Judah shall go up first." When the battle was joined, Israel were defeated, and lost that day twenty-two thousand men. The next day Israel again inquired of the Lord and having received



an encouraging reply, once more attacked the Benjamites. They were again worsted, and lost on the second day eighteen thousand men. Then all the children of Israel wept before the Lord, and "fasted that day until even, and offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings." Then they inquired of the Lord, and Phinehas, the son of Eleazer, the son of Aaron, replied to them in God's name, "Go up: for to-morrow I will deliver them into thine hand." On the third day they captured Gibeah by stratagem, and slew twenty-five thousand of the Benjamites.

But six hundred of them escaped and took refuge in the rock Rimmon, and abode there four months. The children of Israel turned again upon the Benjamites, and smote every one of them, and destroyed all their cities. They then took an oath, "There shall not any of us give his daughter unto Benjamin to wife."

On the morrow the Israelites "repented them for Benjamin, their brother," and said, "There is one tribe cut off from Israel this day. How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing that we have sworn by the Lord that we will not give them of our daughters for wives." But they found a way out of the difficulty. On numbering the army they discovered that the town of Jabesh-Gilead had not sent a contingent. So they captured the city and slew all its inhabitants, except four hundred virgins whom they gave to the Benjamites for wives. The remaining two hundred carried away some of the women of Shiloh and married them. They then "returned unto their inheritance, and repaired the cities and dwelt in them."

**Ruth.**—Connected with the period of the later judges is the story of Ruth. In the days of Ibzan there was a famine in the land, and a certain man of Bethlehem-Judah named Elimelech, together with his wife Naomi, and his two sons, Mahlon and Chilion, went to dwell in the land of Moab. In process of time Elimelech died and his two sons married Moabitish women, the name of the one being Orpah, and of the other Ruth. The sons dying also, their mother, Naomi, resolved to return to her native land. Naomi advised her daughters-in-law to remain in their own country. At first they refused, but after some persuasion Orpah made up her mind to stay in Moab. Ruth, however, was steadfast. She would not leave Naomi, saying, "Whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge; thy people shall be my people; and thy God my God."

So they journeyed to Bethlehem, and when the people saw the woman widowed and childless, they exclaimed, "Is this Naomi?" And she said unto them, "Call me not Naomi, call me Mara, for the Almighty has dealt very bitterly with me."

**Boaz.**—Naomi had a rich kinsman, whose name was Boaz. While the corn harvest was going on, Boaz showed great kindness to Ruth, allowing her to glean after his reapers, and even bidding his men to “let fall some handfals of purpose for her.” He bade her also partake of the fare provided for his labourers, and not to leave his fields all the harvest. Ruth, by her faithfulness and modesty, so won the heart of Boaz, that he desired to take her unto him for wife. But by the law a nearer kinsman had a prior right to marry the damsel. The kinsman, however, in the presence of the elders of the town, waived his claim, so that Boaz was wedded to Ruth. She bore him a son named Obed; Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David.

## CHAPTER XI.

### **Eli—Birth of Samuel—His Dedication to God’s Service.**

**Hannah.**—Now there was a certain man named Elkanah, who dwelt in Mount Ephraim. He had two wives, Hannah and Peninnah. Peninnah had children, but Hannah had not, and this was a cause of great grief to her. It was Elkanah’s yearly custom to go up with his household to Shiloh, there to sacrifice before the Lord. At this time Eli was priest and judge, and he and his two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, ministered before the Ark of God. As the years went by, Hannah’s grief became greater, and she was less able to bear the tauntings of her rival Peninnah. Then Elkanah said to her, “Why weepest thou? . . . am I not better to thee than ten sons?” But Hannah went up to the tabernacle of the Lord, and prayed and wept. And she made a vow that if God gave her a son she would dedicate him to His service, and he should be a Nazarite. As she continued praying, Eli noticed her mouth; for Hannah prayed in her heart, and though her lips moved her voice was not heard. Then Eli said unto her, “How long wilt thou be drunken? Put away thy wine from thee.” But Hannah answered, “No, my lord, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit. I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but have poured out my soul before the Lord.” Then Eli answered, “Go in peace; and the God of Israel grant thee thy petition that thou hast asked of Him.” Hannah rose up with a joyful countenance. In course of time a son was born to her. When she had weaned him, she took him with her to Shiloh, together with a freewill offering of meat and flour and wine. She brought the child to Eli, and reminded him that she was the woman who had prayed for a son. Then she left him in the priest’s charge, saying, “I have lent him to the Lord; as long as

he liveth he shall be lent to the Lord." Hannah having poured out her gratitude to God in a beautiful prayer, returned with Elkanah to their home. "And the child did minister unto the Lord before Eli the priest."

**Eli's Sons.**—"Now the sons of Eli were sons of Belial; they knew not the Lord." Among other offences was this, that they took of the flesh of the offerings more than was their share, and often took it by force. "Wherefore the sin of the young men was very great before the Lord: for men abhorred the offering of the Lord." All this time Samuel took part in the service of the tabernacle, being clad in a little linen ephod. And Hannah at her yearly visits to Shiloh, brought him changes of garment. She bare unto Elkanah three sons and two daughters.

**A Prophet Reproves Eli.**—Eli was now very old, and full of sorrow for the evil-doing of his sons, which had become a scandal through all Israel. He rebuked them for their sins, but they hearkened not to the voice of their father. And a man of God came unto Eli, and warned him that destruction would come upon his house because of their iniquity. He gave Eli a sign of the truth of his prediction—that his two sons should be slain on one day. He also foretold the greatness of Zadok, saying, "I will raise me up a faithful priest, that shall do according to that which is in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed for ever."

**The Call of Samuel.**—In those days the word of the Lord was precious, there was no open vision. And it came to pass one night "when Eli was laid down in his place, and his eyes began to wax dim, that he could not see." "And ere the lamp of God went out in the temple of the Lord, where the ark of God was, and Samuel was laid down to sleep, that the Lord called Samuel, and he answered, Here am I." The child ran to Eli, and asked if he had called him, but Eli bade him lie down again. Again the voice called him, and again he went to inquire of Eli. And the Lord called Samuel a third time, and again he went to Eli. Then "Eli perceived that the Lord had called the child." Therefore Eli advised Samuel to lie down again, and if he heard the voice calling him, to answer, "Speak, Lord, for Thy servant heareth."

Again the Lord stood by Samuel and called him, and the lad answered as Eli had taught him. Then the Lord told Samuel of the sins of Eli's sons, and how punishment would come upon the house of Eli; for that its iniquity should not be purged for ever. In the morning Samuel opened the doors of the house of the Lord as was his wont, but was afraid to tell Eli the vision that he had seen. But when Eli pressed him to tell, then he



narrated all he had heard. Then Eli answered, "It is the Lord let Him do what seemeth Him good." After this the fame of Samuel became very great, and he was known from Dan to Beersheba as a prophet of God.

## CHAPTER XII.

### War with the Philistines—Capture of the Ark—Death of Eli and his Sons.

**War with the Philistines.**—A war now broke out between the Israelites and the Philistines, and a pitched battle was fought, in which the Israelites were defeated. In sore dismay they resolved to send for the Ark of the Covenant, hoping that its presence would help to turn the fortune of war. Hophni and Phinehas brought the Ark unto the camp, and when the Israelites saw it, they set up a great shout. The Philistines soon learned that the Ark of God was in the Israelites' camp, and the knowledge filled them with dread. Still they nerved themselves for their task, and in a second battle overthrew the Israelites with great slaughter. Hophni and Phinehas were killed, and worst of all the Ark of God was captured by the heathens. And a man of Benjamin ran from the battle field to Shiloh, and told all the misfortunes that had befallen them. Now when Eli heard that the Ark was taken he bowed his head and died. He was ninety and eight years old, and had ruled Israel forty years. The wife of Phinehas, hearing the news, was taken in travail and bare a son. With her last breath she named him Ichabod; saying, "The glory is departed from Israel, for the Ark of God is taken."

**The Ark among the Philistines.**—The Philistines took the Ark of God and carried it in triumph to Ashdod, and placed it in the temple of Dagon, their fish-god. In the morning, "Behold Dagon was fallen upon his face to the earth before the Ark of the Lord; and the head of Dagon, and both the palms of his hands were cut off upon the threshold; only the stump of Dagon was left to him." In sore affright the Ashdodites sent the Ark away from their town unto Gath. No sooner did it arrive there, than a great destruction fell upon the men of the city, and they hurried the Ark to Ekron. But the Ekronites would not suffer the Ark to remain with them, and it was carried about the land of the Philistines for seven months.

**The Ark sent back.**—Acting upon the advice of their priests and diviners, the Philistines resolved to restore the Ark to the Israelites. To give glory to the God of Israel they sent jewels of gold, as an offering with it. Then, placing the ark with the jewels on an ox-cart, they let it go its way. The oxen took the



straight road to Beth-shemesh, and came to a stand-still in the field of one Joshua. The men of Beth-shemesh were rejoiced to recover the ark; "they clave the wood of the cart, and offered the kine a burnt-offering unto the Lord." Yet the men of Beth-shemesh committed a sin, because they looked into the ark of the Lord, and the Lord smote of the people fifty thousand and threescore and ten. Messengers were then sent to the inhabitants of Kirjath-jearim asking them to take charge of the ark. This they gladly consented to do, and they brought the Ark unto the house of Abinadab, and they sanctified Eleazer to keep the Ark of the Lord. The Ark remained in Kirjath-jearim twenty years.

**Samuel prays for the People.**—Then Samuel gathered all the people unto Mizpeh and prayed for them, and the people repented them of their evil ways. The Philistines, hearing that Israel were assembled at Mizpeh, raised an army and pitched against them. The Israelites were afraid, and begged Samuel to cry unto the Lord for them. Samuel offered a sacrifice and prayed for his people. And the Lord sent a thunderstorm upon the Philistines, and they were discomfited, and smitten before Israel. All the cities which they had taken from the Israelites were restored from Ekron even unto Gath.

**Samuel judges Israel.**—Samuel judged Israel henceforth all the days of his life. He made it a practice every year to travel to Bethel, Gilgal, and Mizpeh, there to judge the people; but he made his home in Ramah, where he built an altar unto the Lord.

**The People desire a King.**—When Samuel was old, he made his two sons, Joel and Abiah, judges over Israel. But his sons did evil, taking bribes and preventing judgment. Then the elders of Israel came to Samuel and asked him to appoint a king over them, who should judge them, as was the custom among all other nations. Samuel enquired of the Lord. And the Lord said, "Hearken unto the voice of the people in all that they say unto thee, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I should not reign over them." Then Samuel pointed out to the people the dangers they would run if they chose a king, how he would make their sons his servants; how he would raise an army; how he would seize upon their lands and their crops and their cattle. Nevertheless the people answered that they would have a king who should judge them and lead them forth to battle. Samuel, having received God's command to appoint them a king, dismissed them to their homes.

## PART IV.

## FROM SAUL'S KINGSHIP TO THE DEATH OF SOLOMON.

## CHAPTER I.

**Saul made King—His first Offence.**

**Saul chosen King.**—Now there was a man of the tribe of Benjamin, whose name was Kish. He had a son, Saul; "a choice young man and a goodly," "from his shoulders and upwards he was higher than any of his people." One day the asses of Kish were lost, and he sent his son Saul and a servant to look for them. The quest was vain; and, after passing through many lands, the men came to a city where a prophet of God was staying, of whom they determined to ask advice. This prophet was none other than Samuel. He was awaiting Saul's approach, for the Lord had previously informed him of it. Saul drew near to Samuel and asked him where the seer's house was. Samuel answered, "I am the seer," and then he bade Saul tarry with him, and he would show him what was in his heart. He told him also not to be concerned about the asses, as they were found. Samuel continued, "And on whom is all the desire of Israel? Is it not on thee and all thy father's house?" And Saul answered and said, "Am not I a Benjamite, of the smallest of the tribes of Israel? and my family the least of all the families of the tribe of Benjamin?" There happened to be a sacrifice and a feast in the city that day, and Samuel placed Saul in the chief place, and showed him great distinction. Next day Saul and his servant set out on their way home, and Samuel accompanied them. Then Samuel, having sent the servant forward, took a vial of oil and anointed Saul, and told him that the Lord had chosen him captain over His inheritance. Then he spoke to him of certain signs which should prove the truth of his announcement. Lastly Samuel told Saul to meet him at Gilgal, and so departed. And God gave Saul a new heart, and all the signs promised by Samuel came true. One was that he was met by a company of prophets, and the spirit of God came upon him, and he began to prophesy. From this circumstance arose the proverb, "Is Saul also amongst the prophets?"

**Saul's Election confirmed.**—After this Samuel assembled the people at Mizpeh and told them to proceed to the choice of a king by lot; and the lot fell upon Saul. Then Samuel said: "See ye him whom the Lord hath chosen, that there is none like him among all the people? And all the people shouted and said, God save the King." Samuel instructed the people as to the

manner of the kingdom, and wrote it in a book. Then all Israel went to their homes, and Saul returned to Gibeah.

**War with the Ammonites.**—The qualities of Saul were soon put to the test. Nahash, the Ammonite, besieged the town of Jabesh-Gilead. No sooner did Saul hear of this, than he assembled all Israel and Judah in Bezek to the number of three hundred and thirty thousand men. On the morrow he overthrew the Ammonites in a decisive battle. Then said Samuel to the people, "Come, and let us go to Gilgal and renew the kingdom there." And the people went to Gilgal, and offered sacrifices and rejoiced greatly.

**Samuel reproves the People**—Samuel then addressed all Israel. First, he bade them bear witness to his own integrity while he ruled Israel. Then he told the assembly that they had acted wickedly in demanding a king. To show them that his words were true he gave them a sign. Although it was wheat harvest, the Lord, at the entreaty of Samuel, sent a thunderstorm and rain. The people were greatly afraid, and begged Samuel to pray for them. Samuel reassured the people and exhorted them to walk in God's way and to serve Him in truth and all would yet be well with them.

**Saul's first Offence.**—There was now continual warfare between the Israelites and the Philistines. Saul, in the second year of his reign, had raised an army of three thousand men. The Philistines, however, came up in such multitudes that the Israelites were dismayed and hid themselves in pits and caves. Saul was now at Gilgal, and was waiting for Samuel who had appointed to meet him there on a certain day. Samuel did not appear at the time appointed, and Saul presumptuously took it upon himself to offer a burnt offering unto God. Immediately after Samuel arrived, and was wroth with Saul for what he had done. He told Saul that his kingdom should not continue, and that the Lord had chosen another to be captain over His people; and so he departed. The vast host of the Philistines remained encamped in Michmash, and Saul and his son Jonathan together with only six hundred men abode in Gibeah.

## CHAPTER II.

**Saul's Wars with the Philistines and Amalekites—David anointed King.**

**Overthrow of the Philistines.**—It came to pass one day that Jonathan and his armour-bearer went out secretly to spy out the Philistines. And Jonathan said "If the Philistines see us and say, Tarry where you are, then we will stand still; but if they say



Come up unto us, then we will go up, for that will be a sign that the Lord has delivered them into our hand." Directly the Philistines beheld the two Israelites they exclaimed, "Come up to us." Then Jonathan and his armour-bearer fell upon the enemy and killed about twenty of them. A panic now spread among the Philistines, increased by an earthquake, and they began to disperse, beating each other down as they ran. Then the Israelites fell upon the retreating host and discomfited them with great slaughter. Before entering the fight Saul had made the people swear that they would taste no food till nightfall. Jonathan, not knowing of the oath and being very faint, partook of some wild honey. When this was discovered Saul exclaimed "God do so and more also ; for thou shalt surely die, Jonathan." But the people rescued Jonathan that he died not.

**Saul's second Offence.**—Saul was now commanded to take vengeance upon the Amalekites, because they had lain in wait for the Israelites when they came up out of Egypt. He was to destroy them entirely and everything they had. Saul smote the Amalekites, but spared Agag their king, together with the best of the sheep and the oxen and all that was good. Then God was angry with Saul for saving alive anything of the Amalekites. Samuel, at God's command, rebuked Saul for his transgression, and turned away from him in wrath. But Saul put forth his hand and seized Samuel's mantle and it was torn. And Samuel said "The Lord hath rent the kingdom of Israel from thee, and hath given it to a neighbour of thine that is better than thou." Then Samuel slew Agag with his own hand, and departed to Ramah. He never saw Saul again, nevertheless he mourned for his backslidings.

**David chosen King.**—The Lord commanded Samuel to take a horn of oil and to go to Bethlehem unto the house of Jesse, and anoint one of his sons as king. To prevent Saul suspecting the true cause of the journey, Samuel was to pretend that he was going to offer a sacrifice. Arrived at his destination, Jesse caused seven of his sons to pass before the Seer, but the Lord gave no sign to Samuel that either of these had been selected for the kingly office. Then Samuel asked Jesse if these were all his children, and Jesse replied, "There remaineth yet the youngest, and behold he keepeth the sheep." Samuel ordered him to be fetched, and directly he appeared Samuel knew that this was the chosen of the Lord. So he anointed him in the midst of his brethren, and then departed to Ramah. "And the spirit of the Lord came upon David from that day forward."

Saul meanwhile grew more and more despondent in his mind,



and his servants counselled him to find a harper to play before him and soothe his troubled spirit. Now David was famed for his skill upon the harp, so Saul sent to Jesse, asking him to let his son minister unto him. Jesse consented, and sent his son to the royal camp, bearing a present with him. When Saul saw David he loved him greatly, and made him his armour-bearer. And whenever Saul grew moody, David played before him and restored him to cheerfulness.

**David and Goliath.**—Again the Philistines gathered together their armies and encamped opposite the host of the Israelites, and there was a valley between them. Among the Philistines there was a mighty giant named Goliath, of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. He was clothed in ponderous armour-coat and greaves, helmet and target of brass, and his spear was like a weaver's beam. Day by day for forty days this warrior came before the Israelites and defied any one of them to do battle with him, and not one of them dared accept the challenge. It chanced one day that David arrived at the camp carrying provisions to his three eldest brothers, who were serving with Saul. As he was talking with them, behold the champion of the Philistines came forth, hurling his challenge at affrighted Israel. Then David asked what reward should that man have who fought with Goliath. The people answered that the king would bestow great riches upon him, and give him his daughter in marriage, and make his father's house free from taxation for ever. But his eldest brother rebuked David for remaining in the camp, and bade him go home and tend his sheep. David, however, remained, and his presence in the camp was reported to Saul, who sent for him. Entering the king's presence, David at once offered to go and battle with Goliath. But Saul answered, "Thou art not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him, for thou art but a youth, and he a man of war from his youth." Then David told Saul how, while he was tending his father's flocks he had fought with a lion and a bear, and had slain them. He felt sure that the Lord who had delivered him from those animals, would deliver him from the Philistine. And Saul said to David, "Go, and the Lord, be with thee." Saul then placed his own armour upon David, and girt him with his sword, but the shepherd youth could not move under the weight, so he put them off. He took his staff in his hand and chose five smooth stones from the brook, which he placed in his scrip, and armed with these only and his sling he went out to face the giant. When the terrible Philistine beheld David he disdained him and cried, "Am I a dog that thou comest to me with stones?" David

replied, "Thou comest to me with a sword and with a spear and with a shield; but I come to thee in the name of the Lord of Hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied." Then slinging a stone, David smote the Philistine in the forehead and brought him to the earth. Running up to the prostrate form he cut off the head of Goliath with his own sword. Seeing their hero slain the army of the Philistines fled, and were pursued by the Israelites with great slaughter. David brought the head of Goliath to Jerusalem, but kept his armour as a trophy.

### CHAPTER III.

**Saul jealous of David.—He seeks to kill him.—The love of David and Jonathan.**

**Saul and David.**—A great friendship sprang up between Jonathan, the son of Saul, and David. The character of Jonathan is a very beautiful one, for though he saw David becoming the idol of the people, still his soul "was knit with the soul of David." This friendship was never broken.

Saul and David now returned in triumph from the war. The women of Israel came out to meet them, singing and dancing. As they played, the women answered each other and said, "Saul hath slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands." Hearing these words Saul grew angry, and looked upon David with great displeasure. One day while David was striking the harp in the royal tent, Saul cast a javelin at him twice to kill him. He also removed the young hero from his immediate person, and made him a captain over a thousand men.

**Michal.**—The king, mindful of his former promise, now offered his daughter Merab in marriage to David. But David had no desire for the union, and therefore expressed himself as unworthy to become the king's son-in-law. So Merab was given to another. But Michal, the king's younger daughter, loved David. Hearing of it Saul was pleased, for he hoped to ensnare the young man to his death. He promised his consent to the marriage if David would undertake to slay one hundred of the Philistines. Saul hoped that David might be killed in the fray, but David and his men slew two hundred of the enemy. "And Saul gave him Michal his daughter to wife."

**Jonathan intercedes for David.**—Saul was still determined to take the life of David, and asked his son and his servants to aid him. But Jonathan earnestly begged his father to spare David, who had ventured his life to fight the king's enemies. Saul hearkened to his son, and swore by the Lord that David should not be slain, and even received him back into his presence.

**Saul again seeks David's Life.**—The evil spirit of the Lord was again upon Saul, and again he attempted to slay David. David escaped to his own home. The messengers of Saul surrounded the house, and Michal let him down from a window at night. He fled to Samuel at Ramah. When Saul heard of it he sent his servants to capture him, but when they approached the place where Samuel was instructing the school of the prophets, they also began to prophesy. A second attempt to seize David led to a similar result. Then Saul himself went to Ramah, and the spirit of God came upon him, and he prophesied also. From this circumstance also arose the saying, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

**David and Jonathan.**—Returning from Ramah, David poured out his soul to Jonathan and said, "What have I done? what is mine iniquity? and what is my sin before thy father, that he seeketh my life?" Jonathan tried to re-assure David, saying that as he was in his father's confidence, he knew the king intended no harm. But David was not convinced, so they devised a plan by which they might discover Saul's real intent. The next day being the New Moon, and therefore a holiday, David absented himself from the king's table. The king noticed that his place was empty, but said nothing. The next day David was again away. Then Saul inquired of Jonathan, "Wherefore cometh not the son of Jesse to meat, neither yesterday nor to-day." Jonathan had prepared an answer, and at once replied that he had given David permission to be present at a family sacrifice at his own city. Saul could no longer restrain his anger. He loaded his son with abuse, and ordered him to send for David immediately, for he should surely be put to death. Jonathan exclaimed, "Wherefore shall he be slain? What hath he done?" Saul in uncontrollable rage hurled his javelin at Jonathan to smite him. Jonathan rose from the table in fierce rage, and ate no food that day. The following day he went out into a field, as he had arranged with David, taking with him his weapons and a little lad. David was hidden not far off. Jonathan shot an arrow from his bow, and when the lad went to recover it he cried out loudly, "Is not the arrow beyond thee. Make speed, haste, stay not." This was the signal arranged between the two men, in case Jonathan found that the king still sought the life of his friend. The lad, who was not in the secret, having departed, David arose from his hiding-place, "and fell on his face to the ground, and bowed himself three times: and they kissed one another, and wept one with another, until David exceeded." And Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, for as much as we have



sworn both of us in the name of the Lord, saying, The Lord be between me and thee, and between my seed and thy seed for ever. And he arose and departed: and Jonathan went into the city."

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### David an Exile—His Wanderings—Death of Samuel.

**David and the Shewbread.**—When David fled from Saul, he took refuge with Ahimelech the priest, in the city of Nob. Famished with his long journey, he begged Ahimelech to give him a store of bread. But there was none at hand save the shewbread; and, although it was considered sacred, David, in his necessity, did not scruple to partake of it. He then asked the priest for a weapon, and Ahimelech gave him the sword of Goliath, which had been preserved there behind the Ephod. It chanced that one of Saul's servants, Doeg, the Edomite, encountered David in the city of Nob. This chance meeting bore fatal fruit later on.

**David in Philistia.**—The fear of Saul still haunted David, and he fled to Achish, king of Gath. Finding that his former hostility to the Philistines was remembered against him, he feigned madness. But he found less favour than before, so he escaped, and abode in the cave of Adullam, where he gathered a following of about 400 men of those who were discontented with Saul's rule.

**David's Wanderings.**—After a time, David went to Mizpeh in Moab, but was warned by a prophet to return to the land of Judah. Saul, hearing of this, reproached his servants for not ridding him of his enemy. It was on this occasion that Doeg informed the king of his meeting with David in Nob. Saul instantly sent for Ahimelech, and, after reproaching him, ordered him to be slain. But none of Saul's followers would raise their hand against the Lord's priest. But Doeg the Edomite had no such scruples. He smote Ahimelech, together with eighty-five priests, with the edge of the sword, and plundered the city of Nob. Abiathar, with one of the sons of Ahimelech, escaped, and took refuge with David.

**David's Wars with the Philistines.**—It was told to David that the Philistines were raiding at Keilah. Encouraged by a message from God, David led his men against his ancient foes and smote them with great slaughter. Saul, hearing of this exploit, made another attempt to capture David. But David and his following fled, and took refuge in the wilderness of Ziph: The Ziphites would have betrayed David into the hand of Saul, so once more he fled, first to the wilderness of Maon, and afterwards to Engedi. At this moment tidings reached Saul that the Philistines had invaded the land, so he turned from his pursuit of David.



**David and Saul Reconciled.**—Having routed the Philistines Saul again returned to his pursuit of David. On one occasion, Saul rested in the very cave in which David and his men lay hid. David's followers urged him to kill the King. But David would not raise his hand against the Lord's anointed, but he cut off a portion of his robe. When Saul had left the cave and gone on his way, David went after him and called to the King, and bowed himself to the earth. He then showed him the portion of his robe, and told him that he had spared his life. David entreated the King to desist from the pursuit of one who had never wronged him. "The Lord therefore be judge, and judge between me and thee, and see and plead my cause, and deliver me out of thine hand." Hearing these words, the heart of Saul melted. He wept, saying, "Thou art more righteous than I." Telling David that he knew he was destined by God to succeed to the Kingdom, he bade him swear to spare his family, so that his name should not be cut off. David swore unto Saul, and so they parted.

**David and Abigail.**—"And Samuel died: and all the Israelites were gathered together, and lamented him, and buried him in his house at Ramah."

David now abode in the wilderness of Paran. There was a certain man, dwelling in Carmel, named Nabal, who was exceeding rich in sheep and goats. David and his followers had always protected him; and, hearing that he was keeping a shearing-feast, he sent some of his young men to crave a present. Nabal churlishly refused to give anything; and David armed his men, to take by force what he had previously solicited. But Abigail, the wife of Nabal, a woman as wise as her husband was foolish, hastened to David with a present of bread and wine, raisins and figs. But she said no word to Nabal of her proceedings. She met David marching with his men to plunder her home, and, throwing herself at his feet, entreated him to forgive the folly of her husband. Moved by her beauty and eloquence, David was appeased, and consented to receive the present she had prepared. Abigail returned home, but told her husband nothing, as he had feasted himself to drunkenness. The next day she recounted to him her meeting with David. The heart of Nabal fainted within him, and in ten days he died. Afterwards David married Abigail. He also took to himself to wife Ahimoam of Jezreel, for Saul had given Michal, David's wife, to Phalti, the son of Laish.

**Saul again in David's power.**—David having taken refuge in the wilderness of Ziph, Saul went down with three thousand men to capture him. David noticed where the King lay, and

taking Abishai, the brother of Joab, with him in the dead of night, he stood by the side of Saul, who "lay sleeping within the trench, and his spear stuck in the ground at his bolster." Abishai begged David to let him slay Saul with the spear; but David shrank in horror from the thought. Taking the king's spear and his cruse of water, he silently left the camp, and climbed to the top of a hill a goodly way off. Then rousing the king's host, he reproached Abner and the other captains for their careless watch round the king's person, showing them at the same time the spear and cruse he had taken from the king's bedside. Then turning to Saul he entreated him to desist from his persecution, which had driven him "from abiding in the inheritance of the Lord," and had forced him into exile from the Holy Land. Saul's heart yearned to David at these words. He confessed that he had acted sinfully, and having blessed David, they went on their several ways.

To avoid further pursuit, David again took up his abode among the Philistines, Achish, king of Gath, having assigned to him the city of Ziklag. While dwelling here he made some incursions against the Geshurites, the Gezrites, and the Amalekites.

## CHAPTER V.

### Saul and the Witch of En-dor.—Death of Saul.

**The Witch of En-dor.**—Another war now broke out between Israel and the Philistines; and David with his followers felt compelled to take the field in the train of Achish. Yet he entertained a secret hope, afterwards justified, that he should be spared the bitterness of fighting against his own people. The Philistine army was encamped in Shunem, while Israel pitched in Gilboa. Saul, looking upon the enormous hosts of the enemy, waxed afraid. He inquired of the Lord, but "the Lord answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets." Then Saul bade his servants find out a woman with a familiar spirit—one who pretended she could communicate with the spirits of the dead—that he might inquire of her. And they found him such a one living at En-dor. Saul disguising himself, went to her at night, and asked her to use her art and raise a certain person whom he should name. But the woman answered that she dared not use her powers, as the king punished such an offence with death. Saul swore to her that she should sustain no harm, and commanded her to bring up Samuel. When the woman saw the prophet appear, she cried to the king, "Why hast thou deceived me? for thou art Saul." Saul asked the witch to describe the form that had risen; and the king, recognizing it to be

Samuel, bowed himself to the earth. Samuel sternly rebuked Saul for disquieting his rest. He further announced to the king that God had departed from him, and had given the kingdom to David; that the Israelites should be conquered by the Philistines, and that Saul and his sons should be with him on the morrow. Hearing these dismal warnings, the king fell his full length on the floor in an agony of fear. After much persuasion he arose, and partook of a little food, and left the place that night.

**David dismissed by the Philistines.**—The Israelites now moved their camp to Jezreel, while the Philistines gathered at Aphek. A review of the Philistine army was held, and the commanders were troubled to see David in their midst, fearing treachery. So David and his followers were dismissed, and they returned to Ziklag.

**David encounters the Amalekites.**—Here David found a new trouble awaiting him. During his absence with the Philistines, the Amalekites had made an incursion, had burned Ziklag, and carried away its inhabitants (among whom were the two wives of David) into captivity. David was in perplexity, for, with his small band of six hundred men, he was afraid to pursue after the Amalekites. He inquired of the Lord, through Abiathar the priest, and received a favourable reply. So he turned after the enemy; but when he reached the brook Besor, two hundred of his men were so exhausted that they could proceed no further. With the remaining four hundred he came up with the hosts of the enemy, who were spread abroad, eating, drinking, and dancing. He instantly attacked them, and slew the whole army with the exception of a few hundred men. He recovered all that the Amalekites carried away, both the captives and the spoil, and rescued his own wives. There was also a vast multitude of sheep and cattle, which the Amalekites had brought with them at the invasion, and which fell into David's hands. Retracing their way to Ziklag, the little army came up with the men who had been left at Besor. The more covetous of David's followers wished to deprive these of any portion of the spoil, as they had not been engaged in the actual fighting. But David would not hear of this; so all shared alike—those who went down into the battle and those who stayed with the baggage. This became a statute and an ordinance in Israel. David very wisely gave away a portion of his share of the spoil unto the Elders of Judah, and to his friends in the various cities where he had been wont to dwell.

**Death of Saul.**—The battle so long threatened between Israel and the Philistines was at length fought in Mount Gilboa. The Israelites were defeated with great slaughter, and Saul's



three sons, Jonathan, Abinadab and Melchishua, were slain. Saul too was grievously wounded, so he begged his armour-bearer to slay him lest he should fall alive into the hands of the enemy. But his armour-bearer refused, "therefore Saul took a sword and fell upon it;" and his armour-bearer did the same. And the men of Israel dwelling on the other side of Jordan fled from their cities, and the Philistines took possession. On the morrow of the battle the Philistines found Saul and his sons among the slain. They cut off his head, and stripped off his armour, which they placed in the temple of Ashtaroath. They then nailed his body to the wall of Beth-shan. But some of the valiant inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead went at night and took the bodies of Saul and his sons from Beth-shan, carried them to Jabesh and burnt them there. They buried the bones under a tree at Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

## CHAPTER VI.

### David King over Judah, and Ishbosheth over Israel—The Ark brought to Jerusalem.

**David's Lament.**—At the time of Saul's death, David was engaged in punishing the Amalekites. Three days after the battle in Gilboa an Amalekite, who had escaped from the Jewish camp, came to David and told him that the Israelites had been worsted in the fight, and that Saul and Jonathan were dead. David was incredulous, and asked the man for proof of his words. The Amalekite, thinking to gain favour in the sight of David, confessed that he himself had slain Saul at his own request. He also produced the crown and bracelet worn by the king. Then David rent his clothes, and mourned and wept, and fasted unto even. Calling for the Amalekite he bade one of his followers to slay him, for daring to lift his hand against the Lord's anointed. Then he gave vent to his grief in his touching lament for Saul and Jonathan. "The beauty of Israel is slain upon thy high places: how are the mighty fallen. . . . Ye mountains of Gilboa, let there be no dew, neither let there be rain upon you, nor fields of offerings; for there the shield of the mighty is vilely cast away, the shield of Saul, as though he had not been anointed with oil. . . . Saul and Jonathan were lovely and pleasant in their lives, and in their death they were not divided; they were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions. . . . I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan; very pleasant hast thou been unto me: thy love to me was wonderful, passing the love of women."



**The Kingdom divided.**—The tribe of Judah at once recognized the sovereignty of David. He took up his abode in Hebron, where he reigned seven years and six months. While dwelling in Hebron these six sons were born unto him—viz., Amnon, Chileab, Absalom, Adonijah, Shephatrah and Ithream. But Abner, captain of Saul's host, took Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and made him king over Gilead, and the Ashurites, and Jezreel and Ephraim, and over all Israel. Ishbosheth was then forty years old, and he reigned two years. One day the followers of David, led by Joab, and the servants of Ishbosheth under Abner, met by the pool of Gibeon. They soon came to blows, and Abner and his men were routed and driven from the field.

**War between the Houses of Saul and David.**—There was a long war between the rival kings; but David grew stronger as his rival waxed weaker and weaker. But the feud was brought to an end through a serious quarrel between Ishbosheth and Abner, his chief supporter. Abner at once sent to David offering to place the kingdom of Israel under his rule, and as an earnest of his intention delivered unto him his wife Michal, Saul's daughter. A meeting soon took place between David and Abner, and they made a league together. Abner departed to carry out his offer. Meanwhile Joab, who had been absent from the camp on a warlike expedition, returned, and learned that Abner had been closeted with the king. Joab hated Abner for slaying his brother Asahel in the fight at Gibeon. At once he went to David and warned him that Abner was not to be trusted, and that he had only come to spy out the king's strength. It seems that he could not persuade David to his belief, so he secretly sent a messenger after Abner, asking him to return to the camp. When Abner returned Joab went up to him as if to speak quietly with him, and plunged a dagger in his heart. David was shocked at this act of treachery, and proclaimed his own guiltlessness of the deed. He mourned for Abner, calling him a prince and a great man.

**Death of Ishbosheth.**—The death of Abner ruined the cause of Ishbosheth. Two of his servants conspired against him, and slew him as he lay on his bed. They then hurried to David and told him what they had done. David's wrath was kindled as he heard the recital of this cruel deed, and he ordered the murderers to be hanged.

**David undisputed King.**—The tribes of Israel readily submitted to David. He was now thirty years old, and he reigned forty years. David now attacked and captured Jerusalem, a city of the Jebusites. He fortified it and called it the City of David. "And

David went on, and grew great, and the Lord God of Hosts was with him." His fame reached the distant city of Tyre on the Mediterranean. Hiram its king sent messengers unto David, carrying with them cedar trees. He also supplied carpenters and masons, and they built a palace for David. The king now took concubines in Jerusalem, and they bore him many sons and daughters. Twice the Philistines came up "to seek David," and twice he overthrew them and burned their idols.

**The Ark of God brought to Jerusalem.**—David mustered thirty thousand chosen men to fetch the ark of God from Baale (Kirjath-Jearim). They placed the ark upon an ox-cart, driven by Uzzah and Ahio. "And David and all the house of Israel played before the Lord on all manner of instruments made of fir-wood, even on harps, and on psalteries, and on timbrels, and on cornets, and on cymbals." In a rough path the oxen stumbled, and Uzzah laid hold of the ark to prevent its falling. For this act he incurred God's anger, and he died there by the ark. "David was afraid of the Lord that day, and said, How shall the ark of the Lord come to me?" So David found a temporary resting-place for the ark in the house of Obed-edom the Gittite, where it remained three months, and brought a blessing on the household. David then brought, the ark, with music and dancing and sacrifices, to the city of David. When Michal, Saul's daughter, saw David leaping and dancing before the Lord, she despised him, and jeered at him for his seeming levity. But David sternly rebuked her, and she remained childless unto the day of her death.

## CHAPTER VII.

### David's various Wars—His Sin with Bath-sheba.

**David wishes to Build a Temple.**—David was now at peace with all the nations round him. Full of gratitude to God he yearned to substitute a temple for the tent, in which abode the ark. He consulted Nathan the prophet, who encouraged his desire. That night God appeared unto Nathan, and bade him tell David that he should not build a house of God, but that his seed after him should build a house for His name. He was also to convey the assurance to David that his throne should be established through his offspring for ever. David listened to the words of Nathan, and bowed his heart in submission to God.

**David's Wars.**—The peace was soon broken, and David found himself at war with various nations. He subdued the Philistines, the Moabites, the Syrians (who had come to assist the king of

Zobah). Returning with a vast booty, he consecrated to God all the vessels of gold, silver and brass, which he had captured from his enemies.

**Mephibosheth.**—David never forgot his love for Jonathan. He made inquiries, and found that a lame son of Jonathan, named Mephibosheth, was still living. He sent for him to his palace, spoke kindly to him, and restored to him all the land belonging to his grandfather Saul. He also made him eat at the king's table all his life.

**Further Wars.**—The king of Ammon having died, David sent a message of comfort to his son and successor, Hanun. But the Ammonites insulted the servants of David. Fearing the king of Israel's anger the men of Ammon made an alliance with the Syrians. David overthrew their combined armies, and later on defeated the Syrians again.

**David and Bath-sheba.**—The following year David sent an army under Joab to besiege Rabbah, a city of Ammon, while he himself remained in Jerusalem. One evening he beheld a beautiful woman, whom he desired to make his wife, but she was already the wife of Uriah, one of David's captains. In spite of this the king did not turn his eyes away from her. He sent to Joab, bidding him place Uriah where the battle would be hottest, and if they saw him attacked to retire from him so that he might be killed. Joab carried out the king's instructions, and Uriah was slain in the assault on the city. "And when the wife of Uriah heard that Uriah her husband was dead, she mourned for her husband. And when the mourning was passed, David sent and fetched her to his house, and she became his wife, and bare him a son. But the thing that David had done displeased the Lord."

**The Parable of the Ewe Lamb.**—The Lord sent Nathan the prophet unto David, and he said unto him: There were two men in one city, one rich, the other poor. The rich man had many flocks and herds, but the poor man had but one little ewe lamb, which he loved and tended and cherished, and which was to him as a daughter. Now there came a traveller to the rich man, and he spared to take of his own flock to feed the stranger, but he took the poor man's lamb to dress for the wayfarer. David's anger was aroused at the recital, and he exclaimed, "As the Lord liveth, the man that hath done this thing shall die." And Nathan said to David, "Thou art the man." Then recalling all the favours that God had heaped upon David, he announced that evil should come upon the king out of his own house. David confessed humbly that he had sinned, and Nathan replied that the Lord would put away his sin, but that the child



that should be born to him should die. And so it came to pass, for the child sickened unto death. David lay on the ground and fasted, but on the seventh day it died. The servants feared to tell the king, but from their changed demeanour he guessed the truth. He arose from the earth and anointed himself, and went to the house of God and worshipped, and broke his fast. David's attendants wondered at his conduct, but he replied that while the child was alive he fasted and wept, hoping that God would spare it, but now that it was dead fasting was vain. "Can I bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he shall not return to me." Bath-sheba bare another son to David, whom he called Solomon. The Lord loved him, and commanded that he be called "Jedidiah."

The city of Rabbah finally fell into David's hands, and he treated the inhabitants with great severity.

**Amnon and Tamar.**—Amnon, one of the king's sons, did violence to Tamar, the sister of Absalom, and his own half-sister. Absalom hated Amnon on this account, and having invited him to a sheep-shearing, caused him to be slain. Absalom, fearing his father's anger, fled to Geshur, and dwelt there three years.

**Joab's Stratagem.**—Joab perceived that the king's heart yearned towards Absalom. He dared not propose to bring the son into the father's presence, so he prompted a wise woman of Tekoah to speak a parable to the king. She said she had two sons, and that one slew the other in a quarrel. As a consequence, all the family had risen against the surviving son. But she had no desire that they should slay him, who was the only one left to her. The king at once promised to protect him from the violence of his kinsmen. The woman then carefully turned the parable to meet the king's own case. David divined that Joab's hand was in all this, and the woman confessed as much. He sent for Joab, and bade him bring Absalom to Jerusalem, but he could not yet bring himself to see him. So Absalom abode in Jerusalem for two years, after which he was fully reconciled to his father.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Absalom's Rebellion.—David's Flight and Return.— Absalom's Death.

**Absalom's Revolt.**—Absalom soon forgot the mercy shown to him by the king. He obtained chariots and horses, and appointed fifty men to run before him. He also won the favour of the people, by showing marked attention to those who came to Jerusalem to attend the courts of justice. To rouse the tribes of



Israel he sent spies throughout the land, telling them to await his signal for a general rising. Then, having obtained the king's permission, he set out for Hebron with 200 men, and there proclaimed himself king. Among those who accompanied Absalom was Ahithophel, who was renowned for his wisdom. The conspiracy grew stronger, as each day more men joined Absalom's standard.

**David's Flight.**—When the report of these doings reached David, he at once saw that he could not resist his rebellious son. Collecting his family and dependants, he fled towards the way of the wilderness. Zadok the priest, with the ark of God, and Abiathar accompanied him, but he sent them back to Jerusalem that they might inform him what was doing there. He also commanded his friend Hushai to remain near Absalom's person and defeat the counsel of Ahithophel; and as David went up the ascent of Mount Olivet, he wept and had his head covered and went bare-foot, and all that were with him went up weeping. When David reached the top of the hill, he was met by Ziba, the servant of Mephibosheth, bearing food and wine. But further on, at Bahurim, Shimei, one of the family of Saul, came forth and cursed David, and flung dust and stones. One of the king's captains craved permission to slay the reviler, but David said, "Let him alone and let him curse, for the Lord hath bidden him." Absalom set up his court in Jerusalem and received Hushai as one of his counsellors.

**Ahithophel's Advice.**—Ahithophel advised Absalom to pursue David at once with an army of twelve thousand men. But Absalom consulted Hushai before taking any steps. Hushai, intent upon serving his friend David, counselled the king to reject Ahithophel's plan, and to gather all Israel from Dan to Beersheba, so that Absalom might place himself at the head of an invincible army. His object, of course, was to allow David plenty of time to escape. Absalom listened to the words of Hushai, and Ahithophel, annoyed that his advice was rejected, hanged himself in his house. Hushai informed David secretly of what was doing in Jerusalem. The king fled across the Jordan to Mahanaim, where he was kindly received. Absalom, relentless in his pursuit, also crossed the Jordan, and encamped his army in the land of Gilead.

**Death of Absalom.**—David divided his army of twelve thousand men between three trusty captains. As they went forth to join battle with their pursuers, the king entreated them not to deal harshly with Absalom. The battle was long and terrible, and the people of Israel were slain before the servants of David. Absalom, mounted on a mule, fled for his life, but pass-

ing under an oak, the boughs caught him up and held him by his beautiful long hair. Unable to extricate himself, he was slain by Joab and his attendants. The news of the victory was carried to David, but any joy he might have felt was marred by the tidings of his son's death. He retired to his chamber weeping, and as he went he cried, "O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! would God I had died for thee, O Absalom, my son, my son!"

**David's Return to Jerusalem.**—The grief of the king cast a gloom upon his followers. Joab remonstrated with David, because he had shamed the faces of the men who had saved his life and the lives of his family. So David hid his grief, and sat at the gate as usual. The people of Israel were now as anxious for David's return as they had hitherto been to join in Absalom's revolt. The king returned in triumph; his army increasing day by day. On his way back he was met by Shimei who fell down before the king and craved his forgiveness. David readily pardoned him. But now another trouble arose. The men of Judah who had remained faithful to David escorted him in triumph. This roused the jealousy of the men of Israel, who complained that the men of Judah had stolen the king. These latter answered in words "fiercer than the word of the men of Israel."

**Sheba's Revolt.**—The people were ripe for mischief; so when Sheba, a Benjamite, raised the well-known cry, "Every man to his tent, O Israel!" all the Israelites deserted David and followed Sheba. David lost no time, but sent an army after him, led by Joab. Sheba fled through all Israel, and at last took refuge in the town Abel. Here he was besieged by his pursuers. There was a certain wise woman in the town who parleyed with Joab, and besought him not to destroy the town. Joab agreed to do so provided Sheba were given up. The woman persuaded her townsfolk, and they killed Sheba and cast his head over the wall; Joab and the army then returned to Jerusalem.

## CHAPTER IX.

### The Last Days of David.—The Psalms.

**The Gibeonites Appeased.**—There was a famine in the land for three successive years. David inquired the cause, and the Lord answered that it was because Saul had slain the Gibeonites. To atone for this crime David, at the request of the Gibeonites, delivered up to them seven men of the house of Saul, whom they hanged. But Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah, one of Saul's wives, watched the dead bodies all through the harvest time, "and suffered neither the birds of the air to rest on them by day, nor the beasts of

the field by night." When David heard of this noble devotion he caused the remains to be buried. At this time, too, David removed the bones of Saul and Jonathan from Jabesh-Gilead, and buried them in the country of Benjamin. Several battles with the Philistines took place after these events, in one of which David was almost slain, so his captains would not allow him to take part in any further encounters.

**David Numbers the People.**—"The anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel, and He moved David against them to say, Go, number Israel and Judah." Joab tried to dissuade him from committing this trespass, but the king was obstinate. So the people were counted, "and there were in Israel eight hundred thousand valiant men that drew the sword; and the men of Judah were five hundred thousand." David almost immediately repented his rash act, and besought the Lord for forgiveness. By the mouth of Gad the seer, the Lord gave David choice of three punishments—viz., seven years of famine in the land, or three months of flight from before his enemies, or three days of pestilence. David chose the latter, and seventy thousand of the people perished. The plague stayed at the threshing-floor of Araunah, near Jerusalem. David purchased the plot of land, and building an altar thereon, offered up burnt-offerings and peace-offerings.

**David again wishes to Build a Temple.**—The desire to raise a temple to God had always been close to the king's heart, but its gratification was denied to him. His hands were too deeply stained with blood to be engaged in so holy a work. He charged his son Solomon to build the house in which God should dwell, and prepared in abundance iron, brass, and cedar wood. He set masons to hew wrought stones. He also commanded the princes of Israel to help Solomon in carrying out his design. David then gathered all the priests and the Levites, and divided the service of the Tabernacle between them in regular courses.

**David makes Solomon his Heir.**—Adonijah, a brother of Absalom, now exalted himself, saying, "I will be king." He prepared for himself chariots and horsemen, and took Joab and Abiathar the priest into his counsels. Nathan, alarmed at this outbreak, induced Bath-sheba to plead the cause of her son Solomon before the king. Bath-sheba accordingly stood before the king, informed him of Adonijah's revolt, and entreated him to declare that Solomon should succeed him on the throne. While she was yet speaking, Nathan, as previously arranged, entered the king's presence, and repeated Bath-sheba's request. Then David swore by the Lord that Solomon should reign after him and sit upon his throne. Then calling Zadok the priest, and Nathan and Benaiah,



he bade them take Solomon and anoint him king at once. "Zadok took an horn of oil out of the tabernacle, and anointed Solomon. And they blew the trumpet, and all the people said, God save King Solomon." When Adonijah heard that Solomon had been proclaimed king, he feared for his life, and took refuge at the horns of the altar. But Solomon sent for him, and told him to go to his house in peace.

**Death of David.**—The king's end was drawing near. He sent for his son Solomon, and charged him to keep the way of God, and observe his commandments as written in the Law of Moses. He pointed out to Solomon who had been his friends and his enemies, and while he asked that the former might be rewarded, he insisted that the latter should not go unpunished. "So David slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David." He reigned over Israel forty years—seven in Hebron, and thirty-three in Jerusalem.

**The Psalms of David.**—David was not only a brave warrior, an intrepid leader, and a devoted friend, he was also the most inspired of poets. The outpourings of his genius are found in that section of Holy Writ called "The Psalms," consisting of 150 poetical compositions of various length. They were not all written by David, some having been composed as late as the Captivity. They are filled with some of the finest imagery that the human mind has ever conceived. They glow with gratitude to God for his abundant favours; they are instinct with praise and prayer with devotional fervour such as rarely moves the heart of man. Now they rise in exultation at the achievement of victory, spiritual or material; now they wail of the human soul sunk in misery, bitterness, and gloom. Some were written for special occasions, to mark certain events which touched the history of the nation, or affected the private life of the singer; others are the outpourings of the soul for God's goodness and favour to all mankind. The Jews have always held the Psalms in peculiar veneration and love. They are recited on all occasions of rejoicing or sorrow, and form no small part of the synagogal ritual.

## CHAPTER X.

**Solomon Ascends the Throne.—He Builds the Temple.**

**Solomon's first Acts.**—Solomon succeeded his father at the age of eighteen. He was singularly gifted, and the kingdom was at peace. He was soon obliged to show the sterner part of his nature. The restless Adonijah demanded as his wife Abishag the Shunamite, she who had ministered to the king's old age. Solomon, thinking that this was only a first step on the part of



Adonijah to claim the throne, ordered him to instant execution. Following the advice of David his father, he banished Abiathar the priest from Jerusalem, and caused Joab to be put to death because he had slain Abner and Amasa, captains of the host. He commanded Shimei to take up his residence in Jerusalem, and never to pass over the Kidron on pain of death. It was not long before Shimei transgressed the king's command and paid the penalty with his life. Solomon married the daughter of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and though he loved the Lord and walked in the statutes of David his father, yet he burnt incense in high places.

**Solomon's Vision.**—The king offered a great sacrifice in Gibeon, where was the tabernacle of God, even a thousand burnt-offerings. That night the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, and said, "Ask what I shall give thee." Solomon expressed his gratitude to God for all his past favours, and begged only for "an understanding heart to judge Thy people, that I may discern between good and bad: for who is able to judge this Thy so great a people?" The Lord was pleased with Solomon's request, and promised him not only wisdom, but also riches and honour, and even length of days, if he would but keep His statutes and commandments.

**The Judgment of Solomon.**—Two women came before the king in judgment. The first one said that she and the other woman, living in the same house, had both been delivered of a child within three days. The babe of the other woman having died, its mother changed the children at night, taking the living one and giving her the dead one. In the morning light she discovered the deception, and now came before the king for justice. The other woman, however, contradicted her, saying the living child was hers, whilst the dead one belonged to her who had first spoken. The king was sorely puzzled; then he ordered a sword to be fetched and the living child to be cut in two, so that a half might be given to either woman. But the real mother of the child was horrified at the idea of its slaughter, and preferred that the infant should be given up to her rival; but the latter exclaimed, "Let it be neither mine nor thine, but divide it." The king's test had discovered the true mother, to whom the king ordered the child to be delivered. All Israel heard of the judgment and they feared the king, for they saw the wisdom of God was in him. His fame was spread abroad through all nations as the wisest of men. He composed three thousand proverbs (the Book of Proverbs being a portion of them), and a thousand and five songs. These treated of many subjects, of all trees, and beasts, and fowl, of creeping things and fishes.

**Hiram's Friendship.**—Solomon sent to Hiram king of Tyre, asking him to carry out the promise he had made to David, to supply materials for building the Temple. Hiram rejoiced that Solomon's heart was set upon this project, and undertook to furnish him with cedars and firs from Lebanon. So Solomon sent thousands of labourers to cut down trees, and to quarry and dress stones, both plain and costly. Hiram also lent men to assist in the work. The two kings made a league, and the peace between them was never broken.

**The Building of the Temple.**—"And it came to pass in the four hundred and eightieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month Zif, which is the second month, that he began to build the house of the Lord." Its length was sixty cubits, its breadth twenty cubits, and its height thirty cubits. The stones whereof it was constructed and the beams had been previously hewn and cut and trimmed, so that in rearing the edifice neither hammer nor axe nor any tool of iron was heard. Stone, cedar and brass were the materials employed, and he overlaid the whole house with pure gold, even to the floor of it. Some of its most beautiful accessories were the Cherubim, ten cubits high, of olive wood, covered with gold, the beautiful pillars which stood at the entrance, and the molten sea of brass standing upon twelve brazen oxen. It took seven years building, and was finished in the month Bul, which is the eighth month, in the eleventh year of the king's reign. Solomon also built himself a magnificent palace, which occupied him for thirteen years.

**Dedication of the Temple.**—The house of God having been finished, and all the vessels required in the service having been arranged in their appropriate places, Solomon assembled in Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, and the leaders of the tribes, at the feast in the month Ethanim, which is the seventh month. A grand procession was formed, and the priests bore the ark into the sanctuary, while the king and the people offered innumerable sacrifices. God signified His approval of all that had been done by filling the Temple with His glory. Then Solomon, in the hearing of all the people, offered up a noble prayer to God. He openly testified to the unity and greatness of God. He entreated that the fane he had built might be a true house of prayer to all Israel. He exhorted the people to make their hearts perfect with God, to walk in His statutes and to keep His commandments. These ceremonies being concluded, the king feasted the whole people for fourteen days, and then dismissed them to their homes, joyful and glad of heart.

## CHAPTER XI.

## Solomon's Greatness and Death.

**Solomon's Second Vision.**—Again the Lord appeared unto Solomon as He had done at Gibeon, and told him that his prayer had been heard, and that the Lord would dwell perpetually in the house he had built. He further exhorted him to obey the Lord's commands, for then his kingdom should be established in Israel for ever; but if he and the people should turn away from following the Lord, then Israel should be cut off from the land, and should become a by-word among all people.

**Hiram's Reward.**—When Solomon had finished the Temple and his own house, he desired to recompense Hiram for his splendid gifts. So he gave him twenty cities in the land of Galilee. When Hiram inspected them he did not like them at all, and called them "Cabul."\*

**The King's Navy.**—Solomon also built a navy of ships at Ezion-geber, which is beside Elath on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom. Hiram sent "shipmen that had knowledge of the sea" to man the vessels, together with men of Solomon's choosing. The ships traded as far as Ophir, probably in Arabia, and brought thence large quantities of gold, sandal wood, and precious stones.

**Queen of Sheba.**—The fame of Solomon was not confined to the Holy Land, but travelled to distant Arabia, whence the Queen of Sheba set out with a great train to visit the wise king. Her camels bore costly presents of spices, and gold and gems. When she saw the state of the King she was overwhelmed with its magnificence, and she blessed the God of Israel for the love He had for His people, and because He had made Solomon their king.

**Israel's Greatness.**—The kingdom of Israel was now at the very pinnacle of its power and splendour. The country over which Solomon held sway extended from the 29th to the 36th parallel of North latitude, and from the 34th to the 39th degree of East longitude. Its length was about 600 miles, and its extreme breadth about 180 miles. Gezer of the Canaanites was a tributary city, and Tadmor in the far-off desert was built by Solomon. His wealth was unbounded. He had one navy trading to Ophir, another to Tarshish (Spain?) "He exceeded all the kings of the earth for riches and for wisdom." His people shared in his prosperity. "The king made silver to be in Jerusalem as

\* Josephus explains this word as signifying "not pleasing."



stones, and cedars made he to be as the sycamore trees that are in the vale for abundance."

**Solomon's Backslidings.**—But the wise king fell into folly and sin. He loved and took to wife many strange women, Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Zidonians, and Hittites; women with whom the children of Israel had been forbidden to hold intercourse. They induced the king to worship strange deities, so that "his heart was not perfect with the Lord his God as was the heart of David his father." He built high places to Chemosh and to Molech, and offered burnt incense and sacrifices unto them. And the Lord was angry with Solomon because he had transgressed the command not to go after other gods. Nor should his sin go unpunished; for the kingdom should be rent from him and given to his servant. Yet for the sake of his father David this calamity was not to happen in his own days, but in those of his son. That son, instead of inheriting the whole realm, should rule over two tribes only, while the rest of kingdom should obey another sovereign.

**His Troubles and Death.**—God stirred up two adversaries against Solomon, namely, Hadad the Edomite, and Rezon, who reigned in Damascus. They troubled Israel all the days of Solomon. There was one of the king's officers, named Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who by his talents had been raised to an important post. One day when Jeroboam was going out of Jerusalem, clad in a new garment, it happened that the prophet Ahijah met him by the way. Seizing Jeroboam's garment he rent it in twelve pieces, and he said to him, "Take thee ten pieces: for thus saith the Lord the God of Israel, Behold, I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give ten tribes to thee." He further admonished Jeroboam to keep the way of God, for then the kingdom should be established in his family. Solomon no doubt got to hear of this interview, for he sought to kill Jeroboam. So Jeroboam fled to Shishak, king of Egypt, and remained there till Solomon's death. "And the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel was forty years. And Solomon slept with his fathers and was buried in the city of David his father; and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead."



## PART V.

## THE KINGDOM OF ISRAEL.

## CHAPTER I.

## Jeroboam.—Nadab.

**The Kingdom Divided.**—Soon after the death of Solomon the nation was divided into two kingdoms, the kingdom of Israel and the kingdom of Judah. The former comprised the ten tribes located in the more northern part of the Holy Land. Its capital was Samaria. The kingdom of Judah consisted of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and occupied the southern portion of Palestine, with Jerusalem as its capital.

**Jeroboam.**—Rehoboam, the son of Solomon went to Shechem on the death of his father for the purpose of being crowned. Jeroboam, however, hastened up from Egypt, and was soon joined by a large following of the people. They demanded of Rehoboam whether he would make lighter the yoke his father had placed upon the people. Rehoboam consulted the aged and wise counsellors of the late king, and they advised him to yield to the just demands of the nation. But his young and headstrong companions gave him very different advice. When he met the people again after an interval of three days, he said to them, "My father made your yoke heavy, and I will add to your yoke. My father also chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions." The standard of revolt was instantly raised. Rehoboam fled to Jerusalem, where the men of Judah and Benjamin rallied to him, while Jeroboam was acclaimed king of Israel. Rehoboam at once gathered an army to put down the revolt, but the word of God came to him through Shemaiah forbidding him to fight against the men of Israel.

**Idolatry Introduced.**—Jeroboam was now firmly established in his kingdom. Desirous of preventing his subjects going to Jerusalem to sacrifice, he made two golden calves and bade the people worship them. The one he placed in Bethel and the other in Dan.

**Jeroboam Punished.**—While Jeroboam was offering incense at one of his idolatrous altars, there came a man of God who rebuked him for his sin. The king, moved to anger, put forth his hand to seize the prophet, but his hand withered so that he could not draw it in again. Then Jeroboam asked the prophet to entreat the Lord for him, and his hand was healed again. The man of God, having fulfilled his mission, declined the proffered hospitality of the king, and went his way. An old prophet who

dwelt in Bethel set out after him, and induced him to return and partake of food, although the Lord had strictly charged him not to eat or drink in that place. A terrible punishment awaited the disobedient servant of God, for he was torn in pieces by a lion.

**Death of Abijah and Jeroboam.**—The king departed not from his evil courses. At that time his son Abijah fell sick, and Jeroboam commanded his wife to disguise herself and go to the prophet Ahijah, in Shiloh, and to inquire what should become of the child. Jeroboam's wife did so, and taking with her a present, came to the house of Ahijah, who was now blind from old age. But the prophet had been forewarned of the visit by God, so he cried out at once: "Come in, thou wife of Jeroboam, why feignest thou thyself to be another? for I am sent to thee with heavy tidings." Then recounting all that the Lord had done for Jeroboam, he broke out in righteous indignation against his idolatry and apostasy, and pronounced a heavy doom against him and against Israel. The Lord "shall give up Israel because of the sins of Jeroboam, who did sin, and who made Israel to sin." Moreover, he told her the child should die. The wife of Jeroboam departed and returned to her house, and when she came to the threshold of the door the child died. Jeroboam reigned twenty-two years, and he slept with his fathers, and was succeeded by his son Nadab.

**Nadab** reigned but two years, and was as wicked as his father. Baasha, the son of Ahijah, of the house of Issachar, conspired against him, and slew him, and reigned in his stead.

## CHAPTER II.

### Baasha—Elah—Zimri—Omri—Ahab—Elijah.

**Baasha.**—The first act of the new king was to destroy every member of Jeroboam's family. He did evil also in the sight of the Lord. Like his predecessors, he dwelt in Tirzah, but proceeded to build the city of Ramah, on the borders of Judah. Asa, King of Judah, regarded this act as a menace, and made a league with Benhadad, King of Syria, against the king of Israel. A combined army was led against Ramah, which being abandoned by Baasha, was utterly destroyed. After this there was continued warfare between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah all the days of Baasha. The word of the Lord came to Baasha, through Jehu, reproving him for his abominations, and threatening him with the fate of Jeroboam. He reigned twenty-four years.

**Elah**, his son, succeeded him. He reigned but two years, at the end of which time he was slain by one of his officers, Zimri, while "drinking himself drunk" in Tirzah.

**Zimri** reigned only seven days. When he seized the throne, the king's army was besieging Gibbethon, a city of the Philistines. The news of Elah's murder reaching the camp, the soldiers at once proclaimed Omri, the commander-in-chief, king. Omri forthwith led his army against Zimri in Tirzah. He captured the city, and, to avoid falling into the hands of Omri, Zimri retired to the palace, set fire to it, and perished in the flames.

**Omri.**—The whole of the people did not follow Omri. A portion set up a rival in the person of Tibni, the son of Ginath. Omri, however, soon subdued his competitor, and reigned undisputed. He transferred the capital of his kingdom to Samaria, which he had bought of Shemer for two talents of silver. "But Omri wrought evil in the sight of the Lord, and did worse than all who were before him." He died after a reign of twelve years, and was buried in Samaria.

**Ahab**, the son of Omri, succeeded, and reigned for twenty-two years. He "did evil in the sight of the Lord above all that were before him." Not satisfied with his own iniquitous promptings, he took to wife Jezebel, the daughter of Ethbaal, king of the Zidonians, whose wickedness has become a proverb. Ahab introduced the worship of Baal, and built him an altar and a temple. About this time Jericho was rebuilt by Hiel, the Beth-elite, who laid the foundation in his first-born, and set up the gates thereof in his youngest son, according to the word of the Lord which he spake by Joshua.

**Elijah.**—One of the most remarkable men in Israel's history now appeared upon the scene. This was Elijah the Tishbite, an inhabitant of Gilead. Nothing is related of his early life or training, but at the command of God he suddenly appeared before Ahab, and announced that there should be neither rain nor dew in the land for years, but according to the word of the Lord. Still obeying the divine behest, Elijah turned eastward, and hid himself by the brook Cherith, that is before Jordan. Here "the ravens brought him bread and flesh in the morning, and bread and flesh in the evening, and he drank of the brook." When the stream failed owing to the drought, he arose and went to Zarephath, which belonged to Zidon. As he entered the town, he beheld a widow woman gathering a few sticks. The prophet begged of her a little water and a morsel of bread. But the woman replied that she had nothing left but a handful of meal and a little oil, of which she and her son were about to partake before they died. But Elijah bade her bake him a little cake, and, in God's name, foretold that the meal and the oil should not fail until the rain came upon the land. And it was so.



**Elijah and the Widow's Son.**—After these events, the widow's son fell sick, and there was no breath left in him. The woman cried out unto Elijah, who carried the boy up into his own room, and laid him on his bed. Then he prayed to God that the lad might be restored to life, and stretched himself upon the child three times. The child revived, and Elijah delivered him to his mother.

### CHAPTER III.

#### Ahab—Elijah and the Priests of Baal.

**Elijah returns to Ahab.**—Three years elapsed; then the word of God came to Elijah, saying, "Go show thyself unto Ahab, and I will send rain upon the earth." Elijah accordingly went up to Samaria; where the famine was sore. The governor of the king's palace was Obadiah, a man who feared the Lord greatly, and who had sheltered and fed a hundred prophets, when the wicked Jezebel had slain the prophets of the Lord. Ahab had commanded Obadiah to travel through the land to see if any pasture could be found for the king's horses; and while Obadiah went in one direction, the king set out on a similar quest another way. Suddenly Obadiah met Elijah journeying to Samaria, and fell upon his face in reverence of him. The prophet bade Obadiah return to his lord and say, "Behold Elijah is here." But Obadiah, knowing how prone Elijah was to disappear without warning, objected to carry a message which endangered his life. He told Elijah that Ahab had sought him in vain throughout every nation and kingdom, and that if perchance, while conveying his message, the spirit of God should call him away, his life would be forfeit. But Elijah swore by the Lord of Hosts that he would shew himself to Ahab that day. The meeting took place. Ahab no sooner saw Elijah than he exclaimed, "Art thou he that troubleth Israel?" But Elijah replied, "I have not troubled Israel; but thou and thy father's house, in that ye have forsaken the commandments of the Lord, and thou hast followed Baalim."

**Elijah and the Priests of Baal.**—Elijah now proposed to the king a test which should prove who was the true God. He bade the king assemble at Carmel all the people of Israel, together with the prophets of Baal, four hundred and fifty in number, and the four hundred prophets of the Groves, "which eat at Jezebel's table." These being gathered together, Elijah exclaimed, "How long halt ye between two opinions? if the Lord be God follow Him; but if Baal, then follow him." The people, conscious of their sins, answered him not a word. Elijah then told them to bring two bullocks. The prophets of Baal were to choose one, to



cut it in pieces, lay it on wood, and put no fire under it ; he himself was to do the same to the other. Then each was to call on his God, and the one that answered by fire was to be acknowledged as the true God. The people assented to the proposal, and the false prophets prepared their bullock. They called unto Baal from morning till evening ; but there was no voice and no answer, and in their agony they leaped upon the altar. At noontide Elijah mocked them, bidding them cry aloud, for surely Baal was a god—perhaps he was talking, or hunting, or sleeping, and required to be waked. Thus incited, the priests of Baal redoubled their cries, and gashed themselves with knives and lancets according to their wont. Their efforts were useless. As the day declined, Elijah called all the people near to him. Taking twelve stones, according to the number of the tribes of Israel, he built therewith an altar, and placed on it the wood and the bullock. He next cut a trench round the altar, and told the people to fill four barrels with water, and pour it over the altar. This they did three times, till the altar and the sacrifice were drenched, and the trench filled. And at the time of the evening sacrifice, Elijah prayed to God : “ Hear me, O Lord, hear me, that this people may know that Thou art the Lord God, and that Thou hast turned their hearts back again.” The words were scarcely uttered, when the fire of the Lord fell from heaven and consumed the altar and the sacrifice, and licked up all the water. When the people saw it, they fell on their faces, exclaiming, “ The Lord, He is the God, the Lord He is the God.” Elijah thought the moment favourable for striking another blow at Baal worship. He commanded the people to seize the false prophets ; “ and they took them, and Elijah brought them down to the brook Kishon, and slew them there.” Returning to the king, Elijah told him that rain was at hand. Ahab prepared to return to his palace ; but Elijah ascended Mount Carmel, and bowed his head between his knees. He bade his servant look towards the sea. The servant went and looked, and said, “ There is nothing.” Elijah bade him go again even seven times. At last the servant exclaimed, “ Behold there ariseth a little cloud out of the sea, like a man’s hand.” This was the rain-sign for which Elijah waited. Presently the heavens grew black with cloud, and the rain descended in torrents. Ahab mounted his chariot and set out for Jezreel, and Elijah, out of respect for the king, ran before the royal chariot to the entrance of the city,

## CHAPTER IV.

**Ahab—Elijah—Benhadad.**

**Elijah's Wanderings.**—When Jezebel heard of these events, she sent a messenger to Elijah threatening his life. The prophet fled to Beersheba, and passed from thence into the wilderness. Overcome with weariness, he sat down under a juniper tree and prayed : "O Lord take away my life, for I am not better than my fathers." In his sleep an angel appeared to him, saying "Arise and eat." Waking, he beheld a loaf of bread and a cruse of water. Partaking of these he went without further food for forty days, journeying to Mount Horeb. Here again he complained to the Lord, inasmuch as the people of Israel had forsaken God's covenant, and slain His prophets, and that even his life was in danger. Then God told Elijah to stand upon the Mount, and as the seer stood, a great and strong wind rushed by him, rending the mountains and breaking the rocks ; but the Lord was not in the wind. After the wind there came an earthquake ; but God was not in the earthquake. Then came a fire ; but the Lord was not in the fire. After the fire there was a still small voice which said, "What dost thou here, Elijah?" Again the prophet uttered his complaint. Then the Lord told him to perform three missions—to go to Damascus, and anoint Hazael king over Syria, to anoint Jehu, grandson of Nimshi, king over Israel, and to anoint Elisha, son of Shaphat, as his own successor. The Lord also comforted him with the knowledge that there were still seven thousand in Israel who had not bowed the knee to Baal, and whose mouths had not kissed him.

**Elijah meets Elisha.**—Elijah departed, and found Elisha ploughing with twelve yoke of oxen ; and as he passed Elijah threw his mantle upon him. Elisha at once responded to the call, and begged permission to kiss his father and his mother before following his master. Elisha made a hurried feast for his people ; "then he arose and went after Elijah, and ministered unto him."

**Benhadad, King of Syria,** gathered an immense army, and summoning his thirty-two tributary kings, with horses and chariots went up and besieged Samaria. He sent messengers to Ahab claiming his treasures, his wives and his children. Ahab replied that all he had belonged to his lord the king of Syria. Upon this Benhadad sent further messengers, stating that his servants should next day ransack the king's palace, taking away the things they most desired. Ahab would not consent to this humiliation, and sent back a defiant reply. Then Benhadad vowed the destruction of Samaria. But Ahab answered him : "Let

not him that girdeth on his harness boast himself as he that putteth it off." Fired by this taunt, Benhadad at once set his host in battle array against the city. Then came there a prophet unto Ahab, telling him that the Lord would destroy the Syrian army by the hands of the "young men of the princes of the provinces," who numbered two hundred and thirty-two. This devoted band set out towards the Syrian camp at noon. Benhadad, who was conversing in his tent, being told of their approach, ordered them to be seized alive. But the young men slew their would-be captors, and a panic fell upon the Syrian host. They fled in terror, and Israel pursued them, and Benhadad escaped on horseback. The same prophet warned Ahab to strengthen himself, as the Syrians would surely return the following year. This prediction was verified. The Syrians attributed their defeat to the belief that the God of Israel was all powerful on the hills, and resolved to fight in future in the plains. Benhadad, gathering a yet mightier force, went up to Aphek to encounter the Israelites. A decisive battle was fought, in which the Syrians were defeated with terrible loss. Benhadad fled to Aphek, and hid himself in an inner room of a house. His servants, clothing themselves in sackcloth, appeared before Ahab, and entreated him to spare the life of their master. Ahab at once sent for the fallen king and showed him great kindness and honour. Benhadad promised to restore the cities captured previously from the Israelites. The two monarchs made a covenant to this effect and parted. Ahab set out on his way to Samaria. On the road he was met by a prophet, who denounced his mistaken leniency: "Thus saith the Lord, Because thou hast let go out of thy hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life, and thy people for his people." Ahab returned to his palace heavy and displeased.

## CHAPTER V.

### **Naboth's Vineyard—Elijah—Death of Ahab—Ahaziah.**

**Naboth's Vineyard.**—There was a certain man named Naboth, who owned a vineyard close to the palace of the king in Samaria. Ahab greatly coveted the vineyard, and offered Naboth a better vineyard for it, or its value in money. Naboth however refused these offers, saying: "The Lord forbid it me, that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto thee." Ahab took the refusal to heart, and lay down on his bed, and would eat no bread. Jezebel, learning the cause of his grief, bade him be merry, for she would obtain him his desire. She sent letters in the king's name unto the elders, and the nobles of the city, bidding



them suborn false witnesses who should accuse Naboth of blasphemy against God and the king. The elders and princes proved the willing tools of Jezebel ; Naboth was duly accused and stoned to death. Then Ahab set out to take possession of the vineyard. But Elijah, who had received a message from God, met him by the way. When Ahab beheld the prophet, he exclaimed. "Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?" And he answered: "I have found thee; because thou hast sold thyself to work evil in the sight of the Lord." Elijah then foretold him the terrible punishment of his sin ; evil should come upon him, and upon his whole house ; the dogs should lick his blood where they had licked the blood of Naboth ; the dogs should devour Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel. When Ahab heard these words he rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted. Because he thus humbled himself, the Lord did not bring the threatened evil in his days, but in his son's days.

**Death of Ahab.**—The King of Syria had not restored to Israel the city of Ramoth in Gilead. Ahab resolved to recapture it, and on his invitation, Jehoshaphat, King of Judah, joined in the expedition. Before the combined armies set out, Jehoshaphat desired Ahab to inquire of the Lord whether success would attend them. Ahab gathered his four hundred prophets and asked them whether he should go up against Ramoth ; and they told him to go up, for the Lord would deliver it into his hand. But Jehoshaphat was not satisfied with the assurances of these men, and asked if there were not to be found a prophet of the Lord. Ahab replied that there was such a man, Micaiah, the son of Imlah, but he hated him, for the prophet always spoke evil of him. But the king of Judah insisted that he should be sent for. The two kings mounted their thrones, and all the false prophets prophesied before them. One of them, by name Zedekiah, had made himself horns of iron, telling Ahab that with them he should push the Syrians till he had consumed them. The servant, who went for Micaiah, begged him to speak to the king in the same strain as the false prophets had spoken. But Micaiah replied that he could speak only the word of God. When Micaiah entered the presence, Ahab asked him whether he should go up against Ramoth. Micaiah mockingly replied that the Lord would deliver the city into the hand of the king. Ahab however pressed him to say nothing but what was true. Then Micaiah prophesied that evil would overtake the king, and that God had put a lying spirit into the mouths of the false prophets to tempt Ahab to destruction. Overcome with anger, the king ordered Micaiah to be at once taken to prison, and to be kept there



till he should return in peace. Micaiah answered: "If thou return at all in peace, the Lord hath not spoken by me."

The kings then led their forces to Ramoth, and they arranged that Jehoshaphat should fight in his royal robes, but that Ahab should disguise himself. The king of Syria had commanded his captains to fight with neither great nor small, save only with the king of Israel. While the battle raged some of the Syrian captains fiercely engaged Jehoshaphat, whom they thought was the king of Israel; but he saved himself by calling out his name. However, a Syrian archer shot an arrow at random which smote Ahab through the joints of his armour. The battle was against the allied armies, who fled every man to his city and his own country. Ahab died at even, and was buried in Samaria; and while his servants washed his chariot and his armour the dogs licked up his blood, as the Lord had spoken.

**Ahaziah**, a son of Ahab, succeeded him and reigned two years. He did evil in the sight of the Lord, and worshipped Baal as his father had done. In his reign Moab rebelled against Israel. Ahaziah fell out of a window in his palace at Samaria, and lay ill on his bed. He sent to inquire of Baalzebub, the god of Ekron, whether he should recover. But Elijah met the messengers, and bade them tell the king he should surely die. So the men turned back to the king, and said that a man had told them in the name of the Lord that the king would die. Ahaziah asked what kind of a man it was. They answered: "a hairy man, girt with a girdle of leather round his loins." The king said, "It is Elijah the Tishbite." At once he sent an officer and fifty men to seize him, but fire came down from the Lord and consumed the soldiers. This happened again with another captain and his band. The king sent a third company, and the captain entreated Elijah to have compassion upon them and to come to the king. Elijah, assured by the Lord that no harm should befall him, went to Ahaziah and repeated his prediction. And the king died according to the word of the Lord which Elijah had spoken.

## CHAPTER VI.

### **Elijah—Elisha—Jehoram.**

**Disappearance of Elijah.**—When Elijah was warned by the Lord that his earthly mission was drawing to a close, he journeyed with Elisha from Gilgal. He had begged Elisha to remain at Gilgal while he went on to Bethel; but Elisha would not leave him, so they went down to Bethel. There was a school of the sons of the prophets at Bethel, and the pupils asked Elisha if he knew that the Lord would take away his master that day, and he replied

that he was fully aware of it. Elijah now announced his departure for the Jordan, and entreated Elisha to remain at Bethel; but he answered: "As the Lord liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee." The two travelled together to the Jordan, where fifty sons of the prophets stood at a distance to see what would ensue. Elijah, rolling up his mantle, smote the waters of the river, and he and Elisha passed over on dry land. The solemn hour was now at hand. Elijah asked his pupil what he should do for him, and Elisha prayed that a double portion of his spirit might be upon him. Elijah replied: "Thou hast asked a hard thing; nevertheless, if thou see me when I am taken from thee, it shall be so unto thee, but if not, it shall not be so." And as they were talking, "behold there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, and parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven." When Elisha saw this, he exclaimed, "My father, my father;" but he saw him no more. He rent his garments as a sign of mourning; then, taking the mantle of Elijah, which had fallen from him, he parted with it the waters of Jordan, and passed over to the sons of the prophets, who acknowledged him their master. These young men, unable to think that Elijah had finally disappeared, searched for him three days in the wilderness, but found him not.

**Elisha's first Acts.**—The inhabitants of Jericho complained to Elisha that the water that supplied the city was bad, and the land barren. Elisha cast some salt into the spring and healed the waters. The prophet now set out on his way to Bethel, and as he went along, the little children of the city came out and mocked him, crying out, "Go up, thou bald head." The man of God turned back and cursed them, and there came forth two she-bears out of the wood and killed forty-two of them. Elisha went on to Mount Carmel, and returned thence to Samaria.

**Jehoram.**—Jehoram now filled the vacant throne of Israel, and reigned twelve years. He wrought evil in the sight of the Lord, yet he put away the image of Baal that his father had made. Mesha, King of Moab, a tributary of the King of Israel, now rebelled. Jehoram made a league with Jehoshaphat, King of Judah, and the two kings led their armies against Moab. On their way through Edom they were joined by the king of that land with his army. They now traversed the desert for seven days, and became greatly distressed through want of water. Then Jehoshaphat asked if there were not a prophet of the Lord to be found, and a servant answered that Elisha was at hand. The three monarchs went to him. But Elisha would have nought to say to the King of Israel, bidding him take counsel of the prophets of his father and of his

mother. Yet for the sake of the King of Judah he would advise them. Then he made a minstrel play before him, and as he listened the Spirit of the Lord came upon him. Then he bade the kings dig ditches in the valley, and it should be that without seeing wind or rain that they should have abundance of water. The next morning, behold the ditches were full of water. As the rays of the sun fell upon the streams, the Moabites thought they were rivers of blood, and exclaimed: "The kings are surely slain, and they have smitten one another; now, therefore, Moab to the spoil." But when they reached the camp, the allies fell upon them and smote them with a dreadful slaughter. They passed through the land of Moab, destroying the cities, stopping up the wells, and felling the trees. When the battle went against him, the king of Moab, with seven hundred picked men, tried to break through to where the King of Edom was stationed, but he could not. Then he took his eldest son and offered him for a burnt offering upon the wall. This act caused great indignation among the Israelites, and they returned to their own land.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Elisha's Miracles.

**Elisha and the Shunamite.**—Now a certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophet complained to Elisha that her husband was dead, and that a creditor had come to take her two sons in payment of her debts. Elisha asked what she had in the house, and she replied nothing but a pot of oil. Then Elisha told her to borrow all the empty vessels she could, and, having shut herself in, to fill them from the pot. The widow did so, and, selling the oil thus miraculously increased, freed herself from her creditor.

In the town of Shunem there dwelt a rich woman, and as often as Elisha visited the place she invited him to her house to eat bread. Taking counsel with her husband, she prepared for the prophet a little chamber, and furnished it with a bed, a table, a stool, and a candlestick. One day, while occupying the room, Elisha bade his servant Gehazi call the Shunamite, and she stood before him. Then Elisha asked what return should he make for all her kindness; should he speak for her to the king, or to the captain of the host? But the Shunamite modestly replied, "I dwell among mine own people." Learning, however, that she had no children, the man of God predicted that she should have a son. The woman in due time bare a son, and one day, when he was grown up, he went out to his father among the reapers. The lad became ill, and was carried home to his mother, who nursed



him on her knees till noon, when he died. The afflicted mother laid the child on the bed of the man of God; then bidding one of the servants saddle an ass, rode with all speed to Carmel. Elisha chanced to see her at a distance, and told Gehazi to run to her and inquire if all were well with her, her husband, and her child. She answered, "It is well!" Then approaching the man of God, she clung to his feet, exclaiming: "Did I desire a son of my lord? Did I not say, Do not deceive me?" Elisha perceived that something was amiss with the lad, although the Lord had not shown it to him. He ordered Gehazi to haste to Shunem; not to wait to salute or be saluted on the way; and to lay the prophet's staff upon the face of the child. But the woman would not leave Elisha; so he arose and went with her. When they neared the house, Gehazi came out and told Elisha that the child had not waked. The prophet entered the chamber, and there lay the child dead upon the bed. Closing the door, he prayed to God, and then stretched himself upon the child till its flesh waxed warm and it opened its eyes. Then, sending for the mother, he said to her, Take thy son. "Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground, and took up her son and went out."

At another time, the sons of the prophets, while eating a meal, found that a poisonous herb had been cooked with the food. But Elisha mixed a little meal with the food, and it was perfectly harmless. On another occasion, he miraculously fed a hundred men with twenty loaves of barley and some ears of corn, and even then a part was left.

**Naaman** was captain of the host of the King of Syria. He was a great man and an honourable, but withal a leper. His wife was waited on by a little Jewish maid, a captive; and she said to her mistress that if her lord would only go to the prophet in Samaria, he would be cured of his leprosy. This speech reaching the king's ears, he sent Naaman to the King of Israel, with a letter bidding Jehoram cure him of his leprosy. As a recompense, Naaman took with him ten talents of silver and six thousand pieces of gold, and ten changes of raiment. When Jehoram read the letter, he rent his garments with grief, saying that the King of Syria was seeking a quarrel against him, in asking him to cure an incurable disease. But Elisha, hearing of the king's distress, bade him send Naaman to him, so that he might learn that there was yet a prophet in Israel. So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariot, and stood at the door of his house. Then Elisha sent out word to him to go and wash in the Jordan seven times, and then his flesh would be clean. But Naaman departed in anger. He thought the prophet would have shown him some



visible sign of his power, and would have healed him on the spot. As for washing in Jordan, were not Abana and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the rivers of Israel? could he not wash in them and be clean? Yet his servants persuaded him to try the prophet's remedy, as it was so easy to achieve. Then he went and dipped in Jordan seven times, and was healed. Full of gratitude, Naaman hurried back to Elisha, and said: "Behold, now I know that there is no God in all the earth, but in Israel." He pressed him to receive a present, but Elisha again and again refused. Then Naaman vowed that he would never more offer burnt offering nor sacrifice unto other gods, but unto the Lord. He also asked pardon of God, when, in discharge of the duties of his high office, he entered the temple of Rimmon, the king leaning upon his hand, and bowed himself to Rimmon. Then Elisha bade him go in peace, and he departed. But to Gehazi it seemed ill that Elisha had spared the riches of Naaman. Hurrying after him, he craved a talent of silver and two changes of garment, in Elisha's name. Naaman generously gave him more than he asked, and Gehazi brought the things secretly into the house. Then Elisha asked his servant where he had been, and Gehazi lyingly replied, nowhere. But Elisha told him he knew the crime he had committed, and sternly rebuked him for it—"The leprosy, therefore, of Naaman shall cleave unto thee, and unto thy seed for ever. And he went out from his presence a leper as white as snow."

After this Elisha went with the sons of the prophets to Jordan to cut timber. As one was felling a tree his axe-head fell into the water. The man cried out, for it was borrowed. Elisha cast a stick into the water, and the axe-head swam, so that the man recovered it.

## CHAPTER VIII.

**Jehoram—Wars with the Syrians.—Death of Benhadad.**

**War with Syria.**—The King of Syria again warred against Israel. The prophet Elisha was able to render signal service to his countryman, for he revealed to the King of Israel all the secret counsels of his enemies. The King of Syria at first suspected some of his servants of treachery, but at last he was convinced that his plans were frustrated through Elisha. Learning that the seer was staying at Dothan, he sent a great host to capture him. They compassed the city round about at night. The next morning Elisha prayed to the Lord, and He smote the host of the Syrians with blindness. Elisha then led them to Samaria. Then the Lord opened their eyes, and they found

themselves in the midst of Samaria. Jehoram would have put them to the sword, but Elisha had them bountifully fed, and then sent them away to their master. For a time there was peace with the Syrians; then Benhadad gathered all his armies and laid siege to Samaria. So strict was the siege that there was a great famine in the city, and an ass's head sold for fourscore pieces of silver. One day the King of Israel, passing through the town, heard two women quarrelling. The king inquired the cause of the strife. And one of them answered: "This woman said unto me, Give thy son that we may eat him to-day, and we will eat my son to-morrow. So we boiled my son and did eat him, and I said unto her on the next day, Give thy son that we may eat him, and she hath hid her son." When the king heard this he rent his clothes. Then in his anger he vowed the death of Elisha that day. He sent a messenger to seize him. Elisha was forewarned by God of what was happening, and at once announced good tidings to the city. "Thus saith the Lord, To-morrow about this time shall a measure of fine flour be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria." One of the courtiers laughed at the prediction, and Elisha told him that he should see the abundance, but should not eat of it.

**Flight of the Syrians.**—Now there stood four leprous men outside the gate of the city, whom the pangs of hunger drove to seek food at the hands of the Syrians. They rose up in the twilight, and went to the Syrian camp, and to their amazement found it deserted. For the Lord had made the Syrians to hear the noise of a mighty army; and they said to one another, Lo, the Israelites and the Hittites, and the Egyptians have leagued themselves together, and are attacking us. So they fled in the twilight, and left behind them their tents, and their horses, and their asses, even their whole camp. The lepers went from tent to tent, eating and drinking, and carrying away gold and silver and raiment. At last they bethought them of their starving brethren in Samaria, and turned to tell the glad tidings in the town. The Israelites at first feared an ambush; but after due precaution, they sacked the Syrian camp; so that flour and barley became as plentiful as the prophet had foretold. But the scoffing courtier partook not of the good things, for he was trampled to death by the people rushing forth through the gate.

**Elisha in Damascus.**—Elisha now journeyed to Damascus. Benhadad, King of Syria, lay ill, and he heard of the arrival of the man of God. The king sent Hazael with costly presents to Elisha, begging him inquire of the Lord whether he should

recover. Hazael went to Elisha, with forty camels laden with the good things of Damascus, and conveyed to him the king's message. "And Elisha said unto him: "Go, say unto him, Thou mayest certainly recover: howbeit the Lord hath shewed me that he shall surely die." Then Elisha wept; and when Hazael asked the cause of his grief, he replied that he foresaw the evil that Hazael would do the people of Israel; he would burn their strongholds, slay their young men, and slaughter their women and children. Hazael, greatly moved, exclaimed, "But what, is thy servant a dog, that he should do this great thing?" And Elisha answered: "The Lord hath showed me that thou shalt be king over Syria." Hazael returned to Benhadad, and told him that Elisha had announced his sure recovery. On the morrow Hazael took a thick cloth, and dipped it in water, and with it smothered the king. Hazael then ascended the Syrian throne.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Jehu—Death of Jezebel—Jehoahaz—Death of Elisha.

**Jehu Anointed.**—Hazael soon led a Syrian army against the King of Israel. He attempted to recapture Ramoth Gilead, but failed. Jehoram received several wounds in his encounter with the Syrians, and withdrew to Jezreel to be cured; and Ahaziah, King of Judah, his ally, accompanied him. The army of the Israelites remained encamped at Ramoth, and were commanded by Jehu, the son of Jehoshaphat.

Elisha, calling to him one of the sons of the prophets, bade him take a vial of oil and secretly anoint Jehu king over Israel. The young man hastened to Ramoth Gilead, and found Jehu sitting with the officers. He exclaimed: "I have an errand to thee, O Captain. And Jehu said: Unto which of all of us? And he said: To thee, O Captain." Then, taking Jehu into an inner room, he poured the oil on his head, and told him that the Lord God of Israel had anointed him king over His people. He bade him smite the whole house of Ahab, to avenge the blood of the Lord's prophets, and the Lord's servants that had been slain. As for Jezebel, the dogs should eat her body, for there should be none to bury her. Then, opening the door, the prophet fled. Returning to the captains, Jehu announced that he had been anointed king over Israel. The people acclaimed him at once, threw their garments on the ground for him to walk on, blew the trumpets, and shouted, "Jehu is king!" Jehu at once ordered that no one should leave the city or carry the tidings to Jezebel. Mounting his chariot, and gathering a company about him, Jehu drove furiously, as was his wont, to Jezreel. When he approached



the city, a watchman, stationed on a tower, announced to Jehoram that he espied a company of men. The king sent a messenger to inquire of the strangers if they came in peace, but Jehu bade the man follow after him. A second messenger was served in the same way. By this time Jehu had drawn so near that he was recognized. Jehoram and Ahaziah instantly mounted their chariots, and went out to meet him in the field of Naboth. When they met, Jehoram exclaimed, "Is it peace, Jehu?" But Jehu asked, What peace could there be so long as the wicked Jezebel and her witchcrafts were unpunished? Jehoram cried out, "There is treachery, O Ahaziah!" and turned and fled. But Jehu drew a bow with his full strength and smote him through the heart so that he died. Then Jehu ordered his body to be thrown in Naboth's vineyard. Ahaziah, too, fled, but was smitten in his chariot, and died at Megiddo. His body was carried to Jerusalem, and buried there.

**Death of Jezebel.**—Jehu now entered Jezreel. As he rode through the streets, Jezebel, with her face painted and her head dressed, looked out of a window of the palace, and taunted him with his treachery. But Jehu, calling to some of the eunuchs, bade them throw her down. "So they threw her down, and some of her blood was sprinkled on the wall and on the horses: and he trod her underfoot." And the dogs devoured her body, according to the word of the Lord by His servant Elijah. Jehu then caused the seventy sons of Ahab to be slain, and utterly exterminated the family and descendants of that wicked king. Proclaiming a solemn feast to Baal, he gathered together all the priests of that idol, and had them put to death. He burnt the images of Baal, and broke down his temples, so that the worship of Baal ceased in Israel. Yet, in spite of this zeal against idolatry, Jehu did not walk with the Lord with all his heart, for he worshipped the golden calves in Bethel and in Dan. Still God promised him that his fourth generation should sit on the throne of Israel.

In the days of Jehu, Hazael, King of Syria, captured many of the outlying parts of Israel, chiefly to the eastward of Jordan. Jehu died, after a reign of twenty-eight years, and was buried in Samaria.

**Jehoahaz.**—Jehu was succeeded by his son, Jehoahaz, who reigned seventeen years. He, too, was a wicked king, and followed the evil example of Jeroboam, son of Nebat. In this reign the Israelites suffered terribly through the invasions of the Syrians under Hazael and his son Benhadad. At length Israel was delivered from their relentless foes by the hands



of a warrior whose name is not recorded in Scripture. During these wars the army of the Israelites was reduced to "fifty horse men, and ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen."

**Jehoash, or Joash**, son of Jehoahaz, next mounted the throne, and reigned sixteen years.

**Death of Elisha.**—When Elisha was sick of the illness whereof he died, Jehoash visited him, and wept before his face. Elisha bade him open a window eastward and take his bow and arrows. Then, laying his hands on the king's hands, he commanded him to shoot. The whole proceeding was to indicate that the future victories were to spring, not from human skill, but from the assistance of God. The king discharged three arrows, and then paused. Elisha was wroth, and told the king he should have shot five or six times, for then he would have utterly destroyed Syria. Then Elisha died and was buried. Some time after the corpse of a man was hastily let down into the same sepulchre, and when the man touched the bones of Elisha, he revived and stood upon his feet.

The prediction of Elisha with regard to the Syrians came true. Three times did Jehoash defeat them, and he recovered the cities of Israel which they had previously captured.

**War with Judah.**—Amaziah, King of Judah, challenged Israel to a trial of strength. Jehoash answered him by a parable, saying: "The thistle that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife; and there passed by a wild beast that was in Lebanon, and trod down the thistle." He further bade Amaziah remain at home, and not allow his heart to be lifted up with pride because he had conquered the Edomites, and warned him that he might meddle in this matter to his own hurt. Amaziah scorned the advice, and led his army against Israel. But the men of Judah were defeated and dispersed. Jehoash captured Amaziah, and, going to Jerusalem, broke down a large part of its fortifications, and carried away to Samaria all the gold and silver in the house of the Lord, together with the king's treasure and many hostages.

## CHAPTER X.

### **Jeroboam II.—To the End of the Kingdom.**

**Jeroboam II.** succeeded his father Jehoash, and reigned forty-one years. He followed in the wicked footsteps of the previous kings. Yet he was a brave leader, for he restored the boundary of Israel from Hamath to the Dead Sea, and carrying the war into Syria, captured Damascus, the capital.

The prophets Jonah, Amos, and Hosea lived in this reign,

They continually reprov'd the people for their backslidings, and foreshadowed the terrible punishments that would befall them.\*

**Zachariah**, the son of Jeroboam, at length mounted the throne. He, too, did evil in the sight of the Lord. After a short reign of six months he was slain by Shallum, the son of Jabesh, who reigned in his stead. Zachariah was the last of the dynasty of Jehu, to whom the Lord had promised that his fourth generation should reign over Israel.

**Shallum** reigned but one month when Menahem, the son of Gadi, came from Tirzah to Samaria, slew the king, and took possession of the throne.

**Menahem** occupied the throne ten years. He was as wicked as the previous kings of Israel. He inaugurated his reign by destroying those cities which did not at once recognize his authority. And now a new danger threatened Israel. Assyria had gradually become a mighty empire, and Pul, its king, invaded the land with a great army. Menahem purchased his forbearance with a thousand talents of silver. To raise this sum he levied a tax upon his wealthier subjects, exacting fifty shekels from each. The King of Assyria, satisfied with his bribe, turned back, and stayed not there in the land.

**Pekahiah**, son of Menahem, was the next king. His wicked reign had lasted two years when he was conspired against by Pekah, son of Remaliah, one of his captains, who killed him, and reigned in his stead.

**Pekah** reigned twenty years, doing evil in the sight of the Lord. He made a league with Rezin, King of Syria, and the confederates made war upon Ahaz, King of Judah. The men of Judah were defeated in an important battle, and large numbers of them were carried captive to Samaria and Damascus. At the earnest entreaty of the prophet Oded, Pekah restored to freedom no less than two hundred thousand of these captives.

During a second campaign Pekah and Rezin laid siege to Jerusalem. They failed in their attempt on the city, chiefly because Isaiah stirred up its inhabitants to a vigorous resistance. The siege was raised, but the Syrians deprived Judah of the province of Elath. As a last resource Ahaz invited Tiglath-pileser, King of Assyria, to join him against his enemies, at the same time sending to him all the silver and gold that were found in the Lord's house, together with his own private treasure.

\* On the death of Jeroboam the throne remained vacant for ten years. Scripture is silent as to the state of the kingdom during that interval, but most probably it fell a prey to anarchy and confusion.

Tiglath-pileser at once invaded the land of Israel, devastating Gilead, Galilee, and the land of Naphtali, and carrying the inhabitants captive to Assyria.

Then Hoshea, son of Elah, conspired against Pekah, slew him, and reigned in his stead.

Hoshea was the last king of Israel. His reign endured nine years. "And he did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, but not as the kings of Israel that were before him." The cup of Israel's wickedness was now full to overflowing. There was no sin they had not committed, no transgression they had not perpetrated. They had forsaken the Lord, worshipped molten images, and bowed themselves to Baal. "They caused their sons and their daughters to pass through fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do evil in the sight of the Lord, to provoke Him to anger." They did all this in spite of repeated warnings conveyed to them by the mouth of God's inspired messengers. But the Eternal now brought upon them the punishment of their iniquity. Shalmaneser, King of Assyria, invaded the land, and Hoshea submitted to him and agreed to become tributary to him. But Hoshea made an alliance with So,\* king of Egypt, and omitted to send his annual tribute to Assyria. So in the sixth year of Hoshea's reign Shalmaneser led an army to Samaria, and besieged it for three years. In the ninth year of Hoshea's reign the city was taken, and Shalmaneser "carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes."

Thus ended the kingdom of Israel. It had lasted two hundred and fifty-three years.

**The Samaritans.**—The cities of Samaria were afterwards peopled with men from Babylon, Cuthath, Ava, Hamath, and Sepharvaim by the command of Esar-haddon, King of Assyria. These new Samaritans were idolaters, but at their request the king sent them one of the captive Jewish priests to teach them the religion of the true God. Yet they did not give up their worship of graven images. History tells us nothing farther about them till the re-building of the second Temple, when they claimed to share in the work. Being repulsed on account of their heathen origin and idolatrous practices, they became the bitter enemies of the Jews, and tried in every way to hinder and delay the erection of the Temple. Subsequently they built a temple for themselves on Mount Gerizim. Their descendants exist to this day, and possess a recension of the law called the Samaritan Pentateuch, differing in many respects from the Pentateuch in our possession.

\* Probably the Sevectus of Manetho, and the Sabaco of Herodotus.



## PART VI.

## THE KINGDOM OF JUDAH.

## CHAPTER I.

## Rehoboam—Asa—Jehoshaphat.

**Rehoboam**, son of Solomon, was the first king of Judah. After the revolt of Jeroboam and the division of the kingdoms he dwelt in Jerusalem, which remained the capital of his dominions. He was forty-one years old when he ascended the throne, and he reigned seventeen years.

The people soon lapsed into idolatry; they provoked the Lord to anger by placing temples, images, and altars on every high hill and under every green tree. In the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign the country was invaded by Shishak, king of Egypt. He carried away all the treasures of the Lord's house and of the king's palace; the golden shields made by Solomon were also taken away, and were replaced by brazen ones. There was also continual war between Judah and Israel during the whole of Rehoboam's rule.

**Abijam**, his son, succeeded, and reigned three years. He walked in all the sinful ways of his father.

**Asa**, son of Abijam, next mounted the throne and reigned forty-one years. He did that which was right in the sight of the Lord. He destroyed the idols that his fathers had made, but he did not remove the high places; nevertheless his heart was perfect with the Lord. He replaced in the Temple many vessels of silver and gold.

**War with the Ethiopians.**—Zerah the Ethiopian invaded Judah, at the head of an immense army and three hundred chariots. Asa fought a pitched battle with this mighty host at Mareshah in the valley of Zaphethah. The Ethiopians were utterly routed and pursued to Gerar. The victors returned to Jerusalem, bearing with them much spoil, and sheep and camels in abundance.

**War with Israel.**—There was war between Asa and Baasha, king of Israel, all their days. Baasha prevailed against the people of Judah, and invading their land built the strong place of Ramah to overawe them. Whereupon Asa sent costly presents to Benhadad, king of Syria, and invited him to form a league against the Israelites. Benhadad readily consented, and at once invaded the northern portion of Israel. Baasha, in self-defence, was compelled to abandon Ramah, which was razed by order of Asa, and with the stones thereof were built Geba and Mizpah. Asa spent the



rest of his life in peace, though in his old age he suffered from a disease in the feet. He died and was buried at Jerusalem.

**Jehoshaphat**, his son, succeeded him. He was thirty-five years old when he ascended the throne, and reigned twenty-five years. He was a righteous king, and walked in the ways of his father; nevertheless the high places were not taken away, and the people continued to offer and burn incense upon them. Jehoshaphat was a great and prosperous king. He built throughout his kingdom many fortified castles and cities of stone, and caused so great a feeling of security to prevail, that commerce flourished in all parts of the country. He had a fleet built at Tharshish, which sailed to Ophir to obtain gold; but the vessels were wrecked at Ezion-geber. In the third year of his reign he sent forth teachers to the various towns in Judah, who instructed the people in the law of God. By these wise and patriotic measures he established his power, so that no foreign nation ventured to molest him, while such inveterate foes as the Philistines and Arabians sent him presents and tribute.

Jehoshaphat paid a visit to Ahab, king of Israel, at Samaria. A great friendship sprang up between the two kings, which was further increased by the marriage of Joram, eldest son of Jehoshaphat, to Ahab's daughter, Athaliah. It was here that they formed a league against Ben-hadad, king of Syria, which led to the death of Ahab at Ramoth Gilead and the precipitate flight of Jehoshaphat to Jerusalem. When about to enter the royal city the king was rebuked by Jehu the seer, for helping the ungodly and loving them that hated the Lord. As if to atone for this fault, Jehoshaphat grew even more zealous in God's cause. He travelled throughout his realm, exhorting the people to worship the Lord. He placed judges through the land, and strictly commanded them to deal out even-handed justice to all men. He appointed a superior tribunal of priests and Levites, and of the "chiefs of the fathers," to sit in Jerusalem, and there to dispose of the more important lawsuits.

But now danger threatened from the south. The Moabites, the Ammonites, and the inhabitants of Mount Seir came up in vast multitudes to invade the land. Jehoshaphat greatly feared the contest, and proclaimed a fast throughout Judah. While the people were humbling themselves in the Temple, the Lord, speaking by the mouth of Jahaziel the Levite, promised them a victory over their enemies. The next day the men of Judah marched out to meet their enemies; but they had no occasion to fight, for the battle was not theirs but God's. A violent quarrel broke out in the camp of the allies, so that they turned their

swords against each other, and "every one helped to destroy another." When the work of mutual destruction was complete, the men of Judah loaded themselves with the richest plunder, and returned, with joy and music, to Jerusalem. The rest of Jehoshaphat's days were peaceful. He died at Jerusalem, and was buried there.

## CHAPTER II.

### Joram—Ahaziah—Interregnum—Joash—Amaziah.

**Joram**, or **Jehoram**, succeeded his father Jehoshaphat. Influenced by the example of the idolatrous Athaliah, daughter of the wicked Jezebel, whom he had married, he departed from the way of God and did evil in His sight. His first act was to slay his six brothers whom his father had richly endowed. He was a weak as well as a wicked king, and the Edomites were not long in revolting from under his hand. Joram tried to crush the rebellion but without success. Libnah also regained its independence. But a greater affliction was in store for him and his people. The Philistines and the Arabians invaded Judah, and capturing Jerusalem they plundered the king's palace. They carried away the king's treasures, together with his wives and children, leaving only Ahaziah, the youngest. After this the king fell ill of a terrible disease, and died unhonoured and unwept. He had reigned eight years.

**Ahaziah** succeeded to the throne and reigned one year. He did evil in the sight of the Lord, and his mother, Athaliah, counselled him in his wickedness. He joined Jehoram in his war against Hazael, king of Syria. Jehoram was wounded and went to be healed to Jezreel. There Ahaziah visited him and witnessed his murder at the hand of Jehu. Ahaziah fled and hid himself in Samaria. He was discovered and put to death at Megiddo by command of Jehu. He was buried at Jerusalem.

**Interregnum.**—When Athaliah saw that her son was dead she arose and destroyed all the seed royal of the house of Judah. But one of the royal princesses saved the infant Joash, and hid him for six years in the house of God, while Athaliah reigned over the land. In the seventh year Jehoiada, the high priest, raised a rebellion against her. Assembling all the Levites in Jerusalem he armed them, together with the captains of the army, and with them filled the Temple. Then he brought forth the youthful Joash and crowned him and made him king. The people received him with acclamation. Athaliah, hearing the joyous shouts, proceeded to the Temple, and when she saw the newly-crowned king standing at the entrance, she exclaimed,

"Treason, treason." Jehoiada commanded his captains, and they carried her away from the Lord's house and slew her. Incited by the zeal of the high priest, the people broke down the house of Baal and destroyed his altars and images. A grand procession was then formed and the king was conveyed to the royal palace amid every token of rejoicing.

Joash was seven years old when he mounted the throne, and he reigned forty years. He followed the law of God so long as Jehoiada lived to advise and counsel him. Parts of the Temple had fallen into disrepair, and the whole building had been pillaged by the idolatrous sons of Athaliah. The king determined to repair the "breaches in the Lord's house." He placed a chest in the Temple, to receive the offerings of those who contributed towards the expenses of the restoration. As soon as the chest was filled, its contents were counted, and paid to the workmen, who had been engaged in large numbers. The gold and silver vessels used in the Temple service, were also replaced, and the service itself was conducted with splendour and with the greatest regularity.

Jehoiada died at the age of one hundred and thirty years. Then the king, listening to the promptings of his young courtiers, fell into evil ways. He forsook the worship of God, and served groves and idols. Zechariah, the son of Jehoiada, denounced this apostasy: and the people, at the king's command, stoned him to death in the court of the Temple. Punishment soon followed. In the same year Hazael led a Syrian host to Jerusalem. He would, doubtless, have captured the city had not Joash bought him off with splendid gifts, taken from the treasures of the Temple and of the king's house. Joash after this fell ill. Two of his servants, taking advantage of his prostrate condition, conspired against him and slew him. He was buried at Jerusalem, but not in the tombs of the kings.

Amaziah, his son, was the next king, and his reign lasted twenty-nine years. "He did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, but not with a perfect heart." One of his first acts was to slay the murderers of his father, but their children he slew not, in accordance with the command, "The fathers shall not die for the children, neither shall the children die for the fathers: but every man shall die for his own sin." He hired a hundred thousand soldiers out of Israel for a hundred talents of silver; but on the representations of a man of God, he dismissed them again to their own land. Having strengthened his army, he led them against the Edomites, whom he defeated with great slaughter. Elated by this victory, he sent a warlike challenge



to Joash, king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us look one another in the face." Joash advised him to curb his vanity and remain peacefully at home, lest harm should befall him. Amaziah would not listen to reason, and the kings met in battle at Beth-shemesh. Judah sustained a severe defeat, and Amaziah himself was taken prisoner. Then Joash went up to Jerusalem, and broke down the walls from the gate of Ephraim to the corner gate, four hundred cubits. He also plundered the temple and the palace of all the gold and silver and vessels they contained, and, taking hostages with him, returned to Samaria. Amaziah, in his later days, had lapsed into idolatry. His apostasy raised a faction against him in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish, but they sent after him and slew him there. He was buried with his fathers in the city of David.

### CHAPTER III.

**Uzziah—Jotham—Ahaz—Hezekiah.**

**Uzziah, or Azariah**—On the death of Amaziah the people placed his son, Uzziah, on the throne. He was sixteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty-two years. He walked in the ways of God, and listened to the teachings of the prophets, Amos, Zechariah, Joel, and Isaiah. In successive campaigns he conquered the Philistines and the Arabians, while the Ammonites were glad to pay him tribute. He repaired the walls of Jerusalem, and built fresh towers on them. He greatly encouraged husbandry, and dug many wells. "for he had much cattle, both in the low country and in the plains, husbandmen also, and vine dressers in the mountains and in Carmel." Great in the pursuits of war and peace his heart grew proud, and was lifted up to his destruction. Entering the sanctuary, he dared to offer incense before the Lord. At once he was smitten with leprosy, and being thrust out of the Temple, dwelt apart in a separate house till the day of his death. His son Jotham was made regent, and on his father's demise ascended the throne.

**Jotham** reigned sixteen years. He did what was right in the sight of the Lord, still the people worshipped idols and were corrupt. Jotham subdued the Ammonites and received from them tribute of silver, wheat, and barley. He built many cities in the mountains of Judah, and erected the high gate of the house of the Lord.

**Ahaz** succeeded his father Jotham, and reigned sixteen years. He was an impious king, worshipping many abominations, and burning his children on the altars of strange gods. His reign was most disastrous. Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah, king of Israel,



joined their forces to besiege Jerusalem. In his distress, Ahaz sent costly gifts to Tiglath-pileser, king of Assyria, begging him to hasten to his assistance. Tiglath-pileser complied with the request. He invaded Syria, captured Damascus, and slew Rezin, who had hurried back to its defence. Pekah, however, prevailed against Judah. He slew in one day one hundred and twenty thousand, all valiant men, and carried away two hundred thousand men and women captives to Samaria. These would no doubt have endured the horrors of slavery, had not Oded, a prophet of God, interceded on their behalf so effectually that the captives were sent honourably back to their own land. Ahaz journeyed to Damascus to visit Tiglath-pileser, and on his return to Jerusalem introduced the worship of the Syrian gods. In this reign also the Edomites and Philistines gained many successes against Judah. Ahaz was buried in Jerusalem, but not in the city of the kings.

**Hezekiah**, his son, succeeded, and reigned for twenty-nine years. He was a most just and pious king, doing that which was right in the sight of God, "according to all that David his father did." He was unwearied in his resolve to uproot idolatry. He destroyed the images, cut down the groves, and even broke in pieces the brazen serpent of Moses, which had become an object of worship. "He trusted in the Lord God of Israel, so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor any that were before him." His first act was to cleanse the Temple of its defilements, and restore the service of the Most High. He exhorted the priests to assist him in this holy work, and they willingly seconded his efforts.

**Hezekiah's Passover.**—When the work of purifying the Temple had been accomplished, Hezekiah resolved upon a national celebration of the Passover. To this end he sent letters to all the tribes of Israel and Judah, inviting them to Jerusalem to solemnize the festival; which, after advice, he appointed to be held in the second month (Iyar), as there were ceremonial difficulties in the way of keeping it in Nisan. The people of Israel mocked at the messengers of the king, and laughed them to scorn. Nevertheless some of the men of Asher, and Manasseh, and Zebulun, filled with a better spirit, went up to Jerusalem at the king's invitation. The royal city was thronged with devout worshippers. They carefully removed every relic of idol worship from her midst, and on the fourteenth day of the second month commenced the celebration of the Passover, according to the ceremonials laid down in the Law. The priests killed the Paschal offering, and sprinkled the blood in due course. For seven days was the

festival kept with great gladness; the priests and the Levites praising God day by day, "singing with loud instruments unto the Lord." The king joined in the joyous celebration with heart and soul. A second seven days were kept with equal rejoicings, for the sake of those who were religiously disqualified from celebrating the first seven. There had been no such Passover kept since the days of Solomon, king of Israel. It resulted in a great religious revival throughout Judah.

**Overcomes the Philistines.**—Hezekiah soon found himself at war with the old enemies of the Jewish race. He smote the Philistines unto Gaza, and wasted all their borders.

In the sixth year of Hezekiah's reign occurred the destruction of the Kingdom of Israel by Shalmaneser, king of Assyria, as narrated on page 114.

Isaiah the prophet was the constant friend and adviser of Hezekiah. Micah also flourished in this reign.

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### **Hezekiah (*continued*)—Manasseh—Amon.**

**War with the Assyrians.**—Hezekiah now determined to release his kingdom from the yoke of the Assyrians, and, as a first step, he refused to pay them any further tribute. Sennacherib, who was now king of Assyria, gathered a mighty host, invaded Judah, and captured some of the fenced cities. Then Hezekiah's heart failed him, and he sent to Sennacherib, saying, "I have offended: return from me; that which thou puttest on me I will bear." The king of Assyria agreed to depart upon receiving three hundred talents of silver, and thirty talents of gold. Hezekiah, in order to pay this fine, stripped the house of the Lord, and also his own palace, of all the wealth they contained. He also cut the gold from off the doors and pillars of the Temple.

The danger was averted for a time; but after a few years Sennacherib, moved probably by an alliance between Hezekiah and the king of Egypt, again invaded Judah. He himself laid siege to Lachish, while his three generals, Tartan, Rabsharis, and Rabshakeh, at the head of a powerful army, set out to besiege Jerusalem. Meanwhile Hezekiah was not idle. He strengthened the walls and defences of his capital, cut off the water supply from the outlying districts, and made darts and shields in abundance. He appointed captains over the people, and exhorted them all to be courageous and to trust in the Lord.

The enemy was now encamped around Jerusalem, and the Assyrian captains delivered a most insulting message from their master, in which they scoffed at the temerity of Hezekiah, and

railed at the God of Judah. They also addressed the men of the city who had crowded to the walls, bidding them not to put their trust in Hezekiah, but to place themselves at the mercy of the king of Assyria, who would lead them to a land of corn and wine and oil and honey.

When the message of the Assyrian monarch was conveyed to Hezekiah, he rent his clothes, and sent for counsel to the prophet Isaiah. The God-inspired man bade the king be of good courage, and not fear the words of Sennacherib, who had blasphemed the Lord, and whose speedy destruction would follow. "And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the Lord went out and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred four score and five thousand; and when they arose early in the morning, behold they were all dead corpses. So Sennacherib, king of Assyria, departed, and went and returned and dwelt at Nineveh. And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch, his god, that Adramelech and Sharezer, his sons, smote him with the sword; and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon, his son, reigned in his stead."

**Hezekiah's illness.**—After this Hezekiah became sick unto death, and Isaiah bore to him this message from the Lord, "Set thine house in order; for thou shalt die and not live." Hezekiah wept sore, and prayed to God, and at once Isaiah brought him the comforting assurance that he should be healed within three days, and that the Lord would add fifteen years to his life. The prophet then commanded the king's attendants to lay a plaster of figs on the part affected, and thus it was healed. Hezekiah asked for a sign that his life would be prolonged, and God "brought the shadow ten degrees backward, by which it had gone down in the dial of Ahaz." Merodach-baladon, king of Babylon, moved no doubt by the fame of this miracle, sent ambassadors bearing letters and a present to Hezekiah. The king, in the pride of his heart, showed the Babylonians all his riches, his gold and silver and spices, and all his armour. The anger of the Lord was kindled against Hezekiah. Isaiah stood before him, and foretold that the day would come when all those treasures would be carried down to Babylon, and that his offspring would be slaves in the palace of the Babylonian king. One of the last acts of Hezekiah was to build a new conduit for conveying water to Jerusalem. The king slept with his fathers, and was buried in the chiefest of the sepulchres of the sons of David.

Manasseh, his son, succeeded him and reigned fifty-five years. He was a gross idolater. He built altars to strange gods in the courts of the Temple, made his son pass through the fire, and con-



sorted with familiar spirits and wizards. The Lord warned the people by the mouth of His prophets that terrible evils would overtake them, but king and people were alike deaf to these exhortations. Manasseh shed much innocent blood throughout Jerusalem, and it is traditionally related that he caused Isaiah to be tortured to death.

**Manasseh's Punishment.**—The Assyrian hosts again invaded Judah, and this time with success. They took Manasseh, bound him with fetters and carried him to Babylon. In his affliction “he besought the Lord his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers.” God listened to his prayers and restored him to Jerusalem and to his kingdom. “Then Manasseh knew that the Lord He was God.” He purged Jerusalem of its idols, and removed the altars he had erected in the Temple. He also repaired and strengthened the defences of the holy city, and placed captains of war in all the fenced cities of Judah. His long and inglorious reign ended at last, and he was buried in the garden of his palace.

**Amon**, his son, succeeded and reigned only two years. He was an idolater like his father, but unlike his father he did not repent of his wickedness. His servants conspired against him and slew him. But his death was avenged by the people who put his assassins to death. They then placed Josiah, his son, on the throne.

## CHAPTER V.

### Josiah — Jehoahaz.

**Josiah** began his reign at the tender age of eight, and his rule lasted thirty-one years. Little is known of the early period of his reign, but when he reached the age of sixteen he began to seek the Lord with all his heart. The wickedness and idolatry that were rife throughout his kingdom became an abomination to him, and he resolved to purge the land of its iniquity. In this determination he was ably assisted by his faithful ministers Hilkiyah, the high priest, Shaphan, the scribe, and Shallum, the keeper of the wardrobe. No less zealous to help the king were the prophets Jeremiah, Zephaniah, Habakkuk, and Nahum, who, by their earnest exhortations, strove to fan the flame of religious ardour among the people. Josiah's first work was to restore the Temple worship. He caused every vestige of idolatry to be removed from the sacred precincts, and repaired those portions of the House of God that had fallen into ruin.

**The Book of the Law found.**—While engaged in overlooking the work in the Temple, “Hilkiyah the priest found a



book of the law of the Lord given by Moses." He delivered it to Shaphan, who read it before the king. Josiah recognized the sacred roll, and, overcome with grief at the neglect which had befallen the written word of God, he rent his clothes. He then bade Hilkiah repair to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum, to inquire of the Lord concerning the words of the book that had been found. Huldah replied, that all the punishments foretold in the book as about to befall the people through their apostasy would surely come to pass. But inasmuch as Josiah believed in the Lord and humbled himself before Him, the evil would not happen in his day.

The repairs of the Temple having been finished, the king summoned all the men of Judah to Jerusalem, even to the Temple; then, standing in his place, "he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant that was found in the house of the Lord." Then he bound himself and all present by a solemn compact to keep God's commandments, His testimonies, and His statutes with all their heart and soul. After this he sent his officers throughout the land, who removed all traces of idolatry and exhorted the people to serve the Lord their God.

**Josiah's Passover.**—Further to increase the people's devotion, Josiah kept a solemn Passover unto the Lord in Jerusalem. All the necessary ceremonies were performed with minute exactness. "There was no Passover like to that kept in Israel from the days of Samuel the prophet; neither did all the kings of Israel keep such a Passover as Josiah kept."\*

**Josiah's Death.**—The king of Babylonia gradually extended his sway west of the River Euphrates. His successes roused the jealousy of Pharaoh-Necho, ruler of the great Egyptian nation. Raising an immense army, he set out to attack the Babylonian town of Charchemish on the Euphrates. Josiah, espousing the cause of the Babylonian king, raised an army, and attempted to oppose Pharaoh's advance. The Egyptian monarch sent ambassadors to Josiah begging him to desist, since there was no quarrel between Egypt and Judah. Nevertheless, Josiah would not alter his decision, but joined battle with the Egyptians in the valley of Megiddo. Before entering the fray, Josiah had disguised himself as a common soldier. But a stray arrow

\* The mighty kingdom of Assyria was now in its death throes. The Medes and Babylonians joining their forces, besieged its capital, Nineveh, in overwhelming strength. The Assyrian king, Saracus, despairing of success against the combined host, set fire to the palace and perished in the flames. Thus fell Assyria according to the Word of God as foretold by His prophets. Babylonia and Media were founded on its ruins.

pierced the king's body, and he called to his servants to bear him away from the field. They hastened with him to Jerusalem, where he died and was buried in one of the sepulchres of his fathers. The mourning for this truly pious king was general throughout Judah and Jerusalem, the prophet Jeremiah especially lamenting his death.

**Jehoahaz, or Shallum**, one of Josiah's sons, was made king by the people. He reigned only three months. He did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord as most of his ancestors had done. He soon incurred the displeasure of Pharaoh-Necho, who loaded him with fetters and carried him down to Egypt, where he died. The king of Egypt now fixed a yearly tribute on the land, even a hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Jehoiakim—Jehoiachin—Zedekiah.

**Jehoiakim.**—Pharaoh-Necho placed Eliakim, one of the sons of Josiah, upon the vacant throne, at the same time changing his name to Jehoiakim. He, too, was a wicked king, doing evil in the sight of the Lord according to all his fathers had done. In order to pay the tribute exacted by the king of Egypt, he taxed the land very heavily; and although the land was groaning under its many misfortunes he led a life of riot and extravagance.

**Nebuchadnezzar.**—The Egyptians were at first successful in their expedition against the Babylonians. But the aspect of affairs was changed when Nebuchadnezzar, son of the king of Babylon, appeared upon the scene. He was a man of unbounded ambition, a consummate general, and an able administrator. He inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Egyptians at Carchemish and wrested from them all their previous conquests. Pursuing his victorious career, he entered Judah and reduced its king to a state of vassalage. For three years Jehoiakim paid him tribute, but in the fourth year he rebelled. Nebuchadnezzar sent his captains, who raised the Syrians, the Moabites, and the Ammonites against him, and besieged Jerusalem. In the midst of these troubles the king died, having reigned eleven years.

**Jeremiah.**—During the whole of Jehoiakim's reign the prophet Jeremiah was unceasing in his denunciations of the wickedness and folly of the people. Again and again he exhorted them to return to the Lord, lest destruction should overtake them. He prophesied with unmistakable plainness the overthrow of Jerusalem and the captivity that would follow. But his words were unheeded, his reproofs scoffed at. His life was often in imminent

danger. He was cast into prison, and at one period was saved from certain death only at the intercession of one or two of the better disposed among the people. His scribe and disciple Baruch shared with him many of these trials.

**Jehoiachin**, son of the last king, succeeded him and reigned three months. He also did evil in the sight of the Lord. Nebuchadnezzar, who had mounted the Babylonian throne, now marched to Jerusalem to conduct the siege in person. Jehoiachin, finding resistance useless, surrendered the city and himself into the hands of the king of Babylon. Nebuchadnezzar entered the Holy City and despoiled the Temple and the king's palace of all their treasures. He then carried away Jehoiachin and his family, and all the princes and the mighty men of valour to the number of ten thousand captives to Babylon; leaving only the poorest sort of people to inhabit Jerusalem. Among the captives was Ezekiel, afterwards inspired by God. He then appointed Mattamah, the king's uncle, to reign in his stead, and changed his name to Zedekiah. For many years Jehoiachin was treated with great severity in Babylon, and closely confined to prison. But in the thirty-seventh year of the captivity "Evil Merodach king of Babylon, in the year that he began to reign," took the unfortunate king of Judah out of prison, changed his prison garments, and set his throne above the throne of the other captive and tributary kings in Babylon. He treated him with continual kindness and liberality till the day of his death.

**Zedekiah**, the nineteenth and last king of Judah, reigned eleven years. He did that which was evil in the sight of the Lord, nor did he listen to the exhortations of Jeremiah who, throughout the whole of his reign, continued to denounce the impious misdeeds of king and people.

**The People divided.**—There were at this time two factions among the people: the one, headed by many false prophets, sought alliance with the Egyptians in the hope of freeing themselves from the Babylonian yoke; the other, led by Jeremiah, were in favour of acknowledging the supremacy of Babylon, and of waiting and labouring for the time when, through a return of God's favour, the people might regain their independence. Unfortunately the king threw in his lot with the Egyptian party, and he entered into an alliance with Psammetichus II., King of Egypt, although he had sworn fealty to Nebuchadnezzar. In vain Jeremiah warned king and people at Jerusalem that they were rushing to destruction; while Ezekiel, prophesying in Babylon, denounced in unmeasured tones the perfidy of Judah. The exhortations of the prophets fell upon closed ears, and the end, so long and persistently foretold, rapidly approached.



**Siege of Jerusalem.**—The forbearance of the Babylonian king was at length exhausted. In the ninth year of Zedekiah's reign, on the tenth day of the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar besieged Jerusalem and built walls and forts round about it. The siege lasted two years until the people were reduced to the last extremity of famine. The alliance with Egypt proved a broken reed. Pharaoh-hophra, who had succeeded Psammetichus, made a feeble attempt to divert the Babylonians from the siege of Jerusalem, but he was defeated by Nebuchadnezzar at Gaza. No further attempt was made to relieve the city, whose doom was hastened by the dissensions which raged within its walls. Jeremiah finding his counsels were scorned, attempted to withdraw to his native town in Benjamin, but was thrown into prison on a charge of treason. Meanwhile the Babylonians prosecuted the siege with redoubled vigour.

**Destruction of Jerusalem.**—The final catastrophe, so long and so plainly predicted, was now at hand. In the eleventh year of Zedekiah's reign, on the ninth day of the fourth month, Jerusalem was carried by assault. The king, hastily collecting a remnant of its defenders, fled by night, but was hotly pursued by the Babylonians, who overtook and captured him in the plains of Jericho. The unfortunate monarch was carried before Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah where judgment was passed upon him. "And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah and bound him with fetters of brass, and carried him to Babylon."

For a month Nebuchadnezzar deliberated as to the ultimate fate of Jerusalem. But on the seventh day of the fifth month Nebuzar-adan, captain of the guard to the King of Babylon entered the sacred city. "And he burnt the house of the Lord and the king's house, and all the houses of Jerusalem, and every great man's house burnt he with fire." The walls of Jerusalem were razed to the ground, and the remnant of her inhabitants carried away to Babylon; save only the poorest of the land, who remained as vine-dressers and husbandmen. There were likewise carried away all the sacred vessels of the Temple which Solomon had made, those of brass and of gold and of silver. Seraiah, the high priest, and Zephaniah, the second priest, together with other dignitaries, were taken before Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah, by whose order they were slain. But Jeremiah was spared and even treated with honour. Permission was granted him to go down to Babylon or to remain in Judah. He chose the latter alternative and dwelt with his brethren until their subsequent flight into Egypt. Thus fell the kingdom of Judah. It had endured three hundred and eighty-seven years, and been ruled by nineteen kings.



## PART VII.

## THE CAPTIVITY. THE RESTORATION.

## CHAPTER I.

## Gedaliah—Ishmael.

**Gedaliah.**—Before returning to Babylon, Nebuchadnezzar appointed Gedaliah, son of Ahikam and grandson of Shaphan, ruler over the remnant of the people who had been permitted to remain in the land of Judah. Gedaliah set up his court in Mizpah, and there gathered unto him Jeremiah the prophet, and such of the leading men as had escaped the general destruction. Among them was Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, of the seed royal, a restless and ambitious man, who soon formed a plot for the murder of Gedaliah. Johanan, the son of Kareah, revealed the plot to Gedaliah, and even offered to rid him of the conspirator. Gedaliah, however, turned a deaf ear to the warning. In the seventh month of his rule he was treacherously murdered by Ishmael and his followers, who also put to the sword all the Jews and Chaldeans that were found in Mizpah.

**Ishmael.**—The assassination of Gedaliah was kept a secret. On the second day after the occurrence there reached Mizpah a band of Israelites, eighty in number, from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria, to offer up their lamentations at the ruined temple of the Lord. Ishmael, pretending to mourn with them, led them into the midst of the city and then put them to the sword.

But now terror fell upon Ishmael and his supporters. By the murder of Gedaliah and the slaughter of the Chaldeans they had openly rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar, and they feared the wrath of that invincible monarch. They resolved upon flight, and Ishmael compelled the residue of the people to accompany him to the land of the Ammonites. But Johanan, the determined enemy of Ishmael, pursued him with a band of men, and overtook him at the waters of Gibeon. Ishmael was immediately deserted by the bulk of his followers, and was glad to escape to Ammon with but eight of his men. Johanan, still fearing the wrath of Nebuchadnezzar, led the people towards Egypt. Jeremiah entreated the people in God's name to return to Judah, and to dwell in peace under the rule of the Babylonian kings, but his words were unheeded. The Jews entered Egypt and dwelt in Tahpanhes. Their disregard of God's command not to go down to Egypt met with its due punishment. In course of time Nebu-

chadnezzar victoriously invaded Egypt, and revenged himself upon the Jews who had taken refuge in that land.

## CHAPTER II.

### The Captivity—Daniel.

**Daniel.**—The great mass of the Jews now dwelt in Babylon. Their lot was not an unhappy one, could they only have forgotten their native land, with its glorious associations. They were permitted a considerable amount of freedom, and some of their comeliest youths were educated and trained at the king's expense. Among these were Daniel, with his companions, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, to whom were given the Chaldean names of Belteshazzar, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. They received "a daily provision of the king's meat, and of the wine which he drank." But Daniel would not defile himself by partaking of the forbidden food. At his earnest request he and his companions were fed upon pulse, and yet they appeared better nourished, and fairer in face than those who ate of the king's meat. At the end of their period of training, the four young Jews were presented to the king, who was so pleased with their attainments that he appointed them to places near his person.

**The King's First Dream.**—Nebuchadnezzar, in the second year of his reign, dreamed a dream, wherewith his spirit was troubled. He called his astrologers and sorcerers, and bade them tell him the dream and its interpretation; but they were altogether unable to satisfy the king, though he had threatened them with death in case of failure; the secret was, however, revealed to Daniel in a night vision, and he expounded the dream to Nebuchadnezzar. The monarch had beheld a mighty image, the head of which was of gold, the breast and arms of silver, the trunk and thighs of brass, the legs of iron, the feet part of iron and part of clay. In the interpretation, mention was made of the successive kingdoms which were to arise on the downfall of Babylon and of each other. So impressed was Nebuchadnezzar with the wisdom and skill of Daniel that he fell upon his face and worshipped him, exclaiming: "Of a truth it is that your God is a God of gods and a Lord of kings, and a revealer of secrets, seeing thou couldst reveal this secret." Then the king made Daniel ruler over the whole province of Babylon, and also associated his friends with him in the affairs of government.

**The Fiery Furnace.**—Nebuchadnezzar set up an image of gold, and bade all his people bow down and worship it. Some of the princes of the land, who were jealous of the promotion bestowed upon Daniel and his companions, noticed that they disobeyed the

command, and reported their conduct to the king. The king ordered Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to be thrown into a fiery furnace, heated seven times more than it was wont to be heated. But Nebuchadnezzar beheld with amazement that they stood unharmed in the midst of the furnace, and that there was a fourth with them, like unto an angel. Bidding them come forth, he ordered their accusers to be cast into the flames, and they were instantly consumed.

**Nebuchadnezzar's Second Dream.**—The king had another dream, and again it was expounded by Daniel. The king saw a great tree, the leaves whereof were fair and the fruit much. And a voice came from heaven, saying: "Hew down the tree and cut off his branches, shake off his leaves, and scatter his fruit." Daniel told the king that he should be driven from men and dwell with the beasts; that he should eat grass like an ox; and that this condition should endure for seven years. All this came to pass, for one day, as he was boasting of the richness and magnitude of Babylon, a sudden madness seized him, he rushed into the forest and lived with the beasts, "till his hairs were grown like eagle's feathers, and his nails like bird's claws." At the end of the seven years he was restored to his reason and his throne. Nebuchadnezzar died in the forty-third year of his reign.

### CHAPTER III.

#### Daniel — Belshazzar.

**Belshazzar.**—The Bible does not narrate the events of the following twenty-three years, but resumes the history of Babylon in the second year of the reign of Belshazzar, a descendant of Nebuchadnezzar.

**Rise of the Persians.**—A few lines must now be devoted to profane history. A new power was growing in Asia. Leaving their mountain fastnesses, the Persians, under Cyrus, attacked and subdued the effete kingdom of Media. Media was incorporated with Persia, though Cyrus always treated its last king, Astyages (also called Darius) with conspicuous honour. Flushed with victory, the Persians next turned their conquering arms against Lydia, which had grown powerful under its last and greatest king, Cræsus. The struggle was short; the Lydians were defeated, Cræsus was captured, and his kingdom annexed. Cyrus next besieged Babylon, and despairing of carrying its mighty battlements by assault, he determined to turn aside the waters of the River Euphrates, which ran through the midst of the city, and find an entry along its dry course. His soldiers laboured



strenuously but secretly at this work, and it was fast approaching completion.

**Belshazzar's Vision.**—Belshazzar made a great feast to a thousand of his lords. The king, his courtiers, wives, and concubines, drank wine out of the golden vessels brought from the Temple at Jerusalem, and praised their gods of gold and silver, of brass and iron, of wood and stone. At that moment the fingers of a man's hand were seen writing certain words upon the walls of the banqueting hall. Consternation fell upon the revellers assembled. The king, who shook with fear, so that "his knees smote one against another," summoned his wise men and astrologers; but no one could expound the mystic characters. At length Daniel was fetched from the retirement in which he appears to have lived for many years, and entreated to explain the ominous writing. The prophet first rebuked the king because he had defied the Lord of Heaven, defiled the sacred vessels of His Temple, and praised his graven images, "which see not, nor hear, nor know." Then, turning to the wall, he read to the king the words, MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN, and announced their interpretation—"God hath numbered thy kingdom and finished it;" "thou art weighed in the balances and art found wanting;" "thy kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians." As a reward for his skill, Daniel was clothed in scarlet, and proclaimed third ruler in the kingdom.

That very night Cyrus, having turned the waters of the Euphrates, entered through the gap in the battlements, captured the city of Babylon, and slew Belshazzar, together with many of his lords. Thus fell Babylonia beneath the Persian yoke. Cyrus appointed Darius the Mede satrap of the conquered province.

**Daniel in the Lion's Den.**—Darius appointed one hundred and twenty princes who should be over the whole kingdom, and above them all he placed Daniel. The princes were jealous of his promotion, and persuaded Darius to sign a decree that no one should ask a petition of any God or man for thirty days, save of the king alone. He who transgressed this command was to be flung into the lion's den. The princes hoped that Daniel would disobey the decree, and in this hope they were not disappointed, for Daniel offered up his prayers and supplications to God, as was his daily custom. The princes claimed judgment against Daniel, and Darius very unwillingly consented. Daniel was thrown to the lions, but through the mercy of God they harmed him not. Then Darius commanded that the accusers should be thrust into the den, when they were instantly torn to pieces. Daniel lived, honoured and beloved, at the Persian court for the rest of his life.



## CHAPTER IV.

**End of the Captivity—The Temple Rebuilt.**

**Cyrus' Proclamation.**—The long captivity, so patiently borne by the Jews, was now about to terminate. Cyrus, who deserved the proud title of "Servant of God," issued a decree in the first year of his reign, permitting and encouraging his Jewish captives to return to the Holy Land. He further desired his subjects to endow the Jews "with silver and with gold, and with goods and with beasts," besides giving them free-will offerings for the house to be erected in Jerusalem. Cyrus also brought forth the vessels of the house of the Lord that had been carried away by Nebuchadnezzar, to the number of five thousand four hundred, and restored them to the captives.

**Return of the Jews.**—And so the joyous caravan set out on its long march from Babylon to Jerusalem. It comprised 42,360 Jewish souls, besides whom there were 7,367 servants and 8,136 beasts of burden. Nevertheless, many of the Jews remained in Babylon, while many more settled in Persia, keeping up communication with their brethren in Jerusalem, and going up there from time to time. Cyrus appointed Zerubbabel as leader, and conferred upon him the title of "Tirshatha." The Bible states, that among those who went up were "two hundred singing men and singing women;" and it is most probable that these composed and sang some of the Psalms which refer especially to the return from exile. The Holy Land being reached, the Jews settled down in the cities which they had formerly occupied. In the month of Tishri "the people gathered themselves together as one man to Jerusalem, to celebrate the festivals." Jeshua, the priest, and Zerubbabel the governor, set up an altar to God, and offered thereon the prescribed sacrifices. This was not done without a certain fear of the neighbouring idolatrous people. They also celebrated the Feast of Tabernacles, with all its due observances.

**Rebuilding the Temple.**—The people now contributed largely, from the wealth they had brought with them from Babylon, towards the rebuilding of the Temple. They hired masons and carpenters; Tyrian and Sidonian wood-cutters hewed down for them the cedars of Lebanon, conveyed them to Joppa and thence to Jerusalem. In the second year of their return they laid the foundations of the House of God, amidst the greatest rejoicing. Yet the old men, who remembered the first temple, wept, for they thought of its glories, which had vanished for ever.

**The Work Hindered.**—Troubles were not long in coming. When Shalmaneser carried the men of Israel captive to Assyria, he transferred a considerable number of his own subjects to the depopulated cities. These Assyrians, or Cutheans, as they are sometimes called, now came to Zerubbabel and Jeshua, and claimed to partake in the work in which they were engaged, saying: "For we seek your God as ye do, and we do sacrifice unto Him." But Zerubbabel and Jeshua peremptorily refused to let them have any share in the work. Disappointed in their desire, they troubled the people of Judah, and hindered them in their plans. They also influenced Cyrus, who withdrew his proclamation, and so the work of rebuilding the Temple was suspended till the second year of the reign of Darius, King of Persia, a period of about fifteen years. The prophets Haggai and Zechariah lived and prophesied unto the Jews that were in Judah and Jerusalem during this time.

**Dedication of the Second Temple.**—Zerubbabel and Jeshua now ventured to resume the building of the Temple. The Persian satrap of Judea asked by what authority they were proceeding with their enterprise, and was informed that they were acting in accordance with a proclamation issued by Cyrus. The satrap knew of no such document; but caused search to be made for it in the royal records. It was found, and instantly Darius pronounced a decree permitting the Jews to continue their work. The Temple was finished on the third day of the month Adar, in the sixth year of the reign of Darius. The dedication was celebrated with great joy, numerous sacrifices were offered, and the due services of the House of God were regulated according to the law of Moses. In the following month the people went up to Jerusalem, and kept the festival of Passover, with all its ceremonial observances.

## CHAPTER V.

### History of Esther.

**Ahasuerus.**—On the death of Darius, the throne of Persia was filled by Ahasuerus—probably the Xerxes, whose memorable invasion of Greece is well-known to all readers of profane history. His kingdom extended from India to Ethiopia, and embraced one hundred and twenty-seven provinces. In the third year of his reign he gave a grand entertainment to his nobles in Shushan (Susa), his capital. In the height of the revelry, he commanded his queen, Vashti, to appear at the banquet, "to show the people and the princes her beauty." Vashti disobeyed the royal command, and was in consequence divorced by the king.

**Esther.**—After a time Ahasuerus sought another wife. All his kingdom was ransacked to find a maiden fair enough to share his throne. Among the Jews dwelling in Persia was a descendant of the tribe of Benjamin, named Mordecai. He had brought up an orphan cousin, named Hadassah, or Esther, a maiden beautiful to look upon, and good as she was beautiful. She was taken to the palace with the other selected virgins, and so fair did she appear in Ahasuerus' eyes, that he loved her "above all the women;" "so that he set the royal crown upon her head, and made her queen instead of Vashti."

Esther told no one that she was of Jewish kindred, for so Mordecai had charged her. Hadassah's elevation brought with it the promotion of Mordecai, who is spoken of as sitting in the "king's gate." Being thus brought in contact with the court officials, he discovered that a plot was being hatched against the king's life by two of his trusted chamberlains. Mordecai informed the king, through Esther, of the conspiracy. Inquisition was made, the chamberlains were found guilty, and hanged, and the circumstances were written in the Book of the Chronicles before the king.

**Haman.**—After these events Ahasuerus promoted his favourite to the chief post of honour in his kingdom. All the king's officers bowed down to Haman; "but Mordecai bowed not, nor did him reverence." Anger and hatred filled Haman's soul, and he resolved on the destruction, not only of Mordecai, but of all the Jews in the Persian dominions. With the superstition of an Oriental he cast lots to find a month unlucky to the Jews, and the lot fell upon the month of Adar. Going to the king, Haman spoke in harsh terms of the Jews, stigmatising them as a lawless and exclusive people. He counselled their destruction, and offered the king ten thousand talents of silver in exchange for their lives. Ahasuerus, a weak and foolish monarch, sealed a decree forthwith for the extermination of the unoffending Jews. Messengers were despatched to all parts of the kingdom with the king's letters commanding that all the Jews—men, women, and children—should be put to death on the thirteenth of Adar, and that their goods should be taken as a prey. The king and Haman, well pleased with their work, sat down to a feast; "but the city of Shushan was perplexed."

**Esther's Resolution.**—Mordecai soon heard of the decree. He rent his garments, and put on sackcloth and ashes. He sent a message to Esther, bidding her supplicate the king to spare her unfortunate people. Esther replied that she dared not enter the king's presence uninvited; for whoever appeared before the king was instantly put to death, unless the king held forth his golden sceptre as a sign of his royal favour. But Mordecai answered



that if the Jews were destroyed, Esther would most probably perish with them. He also pointed out to her, that if she refused her aid, help would come from another quarter, and that it looked like the design of Providence that she should be queen at such a time. Moved by these words, Esther commanded that all the Jews in Shushan should fast three days and three nights; at the end of that time she would go to the king, although against the law, adding: "And if I perish, I perish."

## CHAPTER VI.

### History of Esther—(continued).

**Esther's Request.**—The fast was held, and the queen, arraying herself in her gorgeous robes, stood before the king. No sooner did Ahasuerus look upon her beauteous face than he held out the golden sceptre, and asked what request she had to make, for he would grant it, were it even the half of his kingdom. The queen replied by inviting the king and Haman to a banquet which she had prepared. The king assented. At the banquet of wine the king again pressed Esther to prefer her request. Esther replied by asking the king and Haman to a feast on the following night, when she would do as the king had said. Haman went forth more than ever elated at the signal honour shown him by the queen; but when he saw the unbending Mordecai in the king's gate his heart was filled with wrath. Taking council with his wife, Zeresh, she advised him to build a gallows fifty cubits high, and to ask the king's permission to hang Mordecai on it.

**Mordecai's Honours.**—On that eventful night the king could not sleep, and to while away the time the chronicles of his reign were read before him. When the circumstances of the plot against his life were read, he suddenly inquired what honour and dignity had been done to Mordecai. The king's servants replied that nothing had been done for him. At this moment Haman entered the royal presence to ask permission for Mordecai's execution. The king at once asked Haman what should be done to the man whom the king delighted to honour. Haman, thinking that the king wished to bestow upon him some new token of his favour, answered that the man should be arrayed in the king's robes, with the king's crown upon his head; that he should ride through the city upon the king's horse, and that a herald should proclaim before him. "Thus shall it be done to the man whom the king delighteth to honour." Ahasuerus ordered Haman to go at once, and do to Mordecai even as he had said. The procession being over, Haman hastened to his house mourning, and with his head covered. The day's proceedings seemed ominous of coming disaster. With a heavy heart he went to the queen's second banquet.



**Haman's Fall.**—Again, at the second feast, Ahasuerus asked Esther what was her petition and her request. Then Esther revealed to the king that she was of the Jewish race, and that she and her people were doomed to destruction. The king, who had probably forgotten the permission he had given to Haman to massacre the Jews, asked who it was that dared presume in his heart to execute such a purpose. Esther replied: "The adversary and enemy is this wicked Haman." Instantly the king's wrath lighted on his former favourite. Harbonath, one of the chamberlains opportunely mentioned the gallows that had been erected for Mordecai, and the king commanded that Haman should be hanged on it.

**Mordecai's Advancement.**—That very day was Mordecai installed in Haman's place. Ahasuerus, yielding to the tearful solicitations of Esther, sent despatches to all parts of his kingdom revoking his former edict, and encouraging the Jews to defend themselves against their enemies. The eventful thirteenth of Adar arrived at length. The Jews, encouraged by the king's decree, bravely withstood the onslaught of their enemies, slaying upwards of seventy-five thousand of their assailants. Amongst them were the ten sons of Haman. In Shushan the attack and resistance were repeated on the fourteenth also. In memory of this miraculous deliverance, the Jews to this day celebrate the feast of *Purim*\* in its due season.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Ezra—Nehemiah.

**Ezra the Scribe.**—On the death of Xerxes, his son Artaxerxes ascended the Persian throne. In the seventh year of his reign, another body of Jews, to the number of over fifteen hundred, set out from Persia to return to the Holy Land. The leadership of this band was conferred upon Ezra, a descendant of Aaron the high priest, a righteous and God-fearing man, "a ready scribe in the law of Moses." Armed with a royal edict, and loaded with gifts of gold and silver, he set out on his journey, in the month of Nisan, and reached Jerusalem in the month of Av. He handed over to the custodians of the Temple the treasures entrusted to his charge. Ezra was shocked and grieved to find that many of the Jews had married heathen wives. He was determined to check this sin with unsparing hand. He summoned the whole congregation before him, and charged them with having transgressed God's command. He exhorted them to confess their crime before

\*. So called from the "lots" cast by Haman to determine in which month he should carry out his wicked design. *Pur* means "lot."

God, and to put away the strange women from their midst. The people acted according to the advice of Ezra, and purified themselves from their transgression. It was at this period that Haggai and Zechariah prophesied to the inhabitants of Jerusalem. The Bible gives few further details of Ezra's work; but, according to tradition, he (1) founded the "Great Synagogue"; (2) collected and arranged the books of Scripture as they now exist; (3) introduced the present Hebrew characters; (4) added the vowel points, which are yet employed; and (5) composed portions of the prayer book which we still use.

**Nehemiah.**—The work of restoration at Jerusalem was now taken up by other hands. Nehemiah held the important post of cup-bearer to King Artaxerxes. Learning from some of his brethren who had lately returned from Jerusalem, that its inhabitants were in great affliction, while its walls were still in ruins, Nehemiah determined to proceed to the Holy City, to improve its condition. In the twentieth year of Artaxerxes' reign he obtained permission to carry out the desire of his heart—the rebuilding of Jerusalem—but promised to return to Persia in twelve years. Armed with an edict from the king, he set out on his long journey, and arrived in due course at his destination. Having viewed the city secretly by night, he set about the rebuilding of its walls with the utmost vigour. The inhabitants entered heartily into his views, and set about the work with enthusiasm. The surrounding tribes, who had been hostile to the Jews since their return, and who were led by Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the Ammonite, and Geshem the Arabian, viewed these proceedings with alarm and envy. They mocked the Jews, taunted them with rebellion against their suzerain, and hindered them in every possible way. So great became the annoyance that Nehemiah had to arm the people; so that half of them laboured at the walls while the other half stood beside them with spear and shield and bow for their protection. So the work went on apace.

**The walls rebuilt.**—Many of the people complained to Nehemiah that they had become impoverished through their brethren taking usury of them, and that they had often been compelled to yield up their vineyards, and even their children, to satisfy their creditors. Nehemiah rebuked the usurers, forced them to restore the pledges, and induced them solemnly to renounce such practices for the future. Nehemiah himself set the people a noble example of disinterestedness and magnanimity. Seeing that his people were in distress, he refrained, all the years he was governor, from exacting the emoluments that were attached to his office. He also fed one hundred and fifty persons daily

at his table. Still the work of rebuilding the walls went on in spite of unceasing hostility from without. Sanballat and his friends now sought Nehemiah's life. They repeatedly invited him to a conference, where they hoped to slay him. When this device failed they hired Shemaiah to persuade Nehemiah that his life was in imminent danger, and that he should shut himself up in the Temple. But Nehemiah resisted this treacherous advice to pollute the Holy of Holies. At length the walls were finished, in the short space of fifty-two days. The doors were then set up, and porters were appointed with strict injunctions to guard against surprise, especially by night.

**The Law read.**—All the people gathered before the water gate and entreated Ezra to read to them the Law of God. So, on the first day of the seventh month, Ezra ascended a wooden pulpit that had been made for the purpose, and began to read aloud the Word of God. Thirteen of the most learned men at the same time explained to the people what was read, probably translating it into the Chaldaic tongue. The reading was continued on the second day, and then the inhabitants prepared to celebrate the festival of Succous. They went forth to the neighbouring mountains and fetched palms and myrtles, and erected booths, as is commanded. The festival had not been so religiously kept since the days of Joshua. On the twenty-fourth day of the same month they kept a solemn fast, "and stood and confessed their sins and the iniquities of their fathers."

**Reform of Abuses.**—As Jerusalem was still under-populated, Nehemiah chose one out of every ten of the people to dwell within its walls, while the rest were allowed to depart to the country. Nehemiah having thus accomplished all that he had desired, returned to Persia. But he was soon recalled to Jerusalem, to reform the abuses that had sprung up in his absence. Eliashib, the high priest, had permitted his son Jorada to marry a daughter of Sanballat, and had even allowed Sanballat to occupy a room in the Temple. Another abuse was that the Levites had been defrauded of the portions due to them. But what grieved Nehemiah most was the open desecration of the Sabbath, which was practised in Jerusalem. The Jews had also relapsed into the sin of mixed marriages, and had allied themselves with the women of Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab.

The prophet Malachi raised his voice again and again to denounce these transgressions.

With a sweeping hand Nehemiah reformed all these abuses. He exhorted the people to live by the Law of God, and to make His word their guide and support through life.



# APPENDIX I. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES. (CHIEFLY AFTER ZUNZ.)

N.B.—The first date indicates the year from the Creation; the second the year before the Civil Era.

1056	3988	Adam and Eve.	2413	1575	Birth of Moses.
1656	2932	Noah born.	2493	1495	The Exodus from Egypt; the Ten Commandments given.
1757	2332	The Flood.	2533	1455	Death of Moses; Joshua.
1757	2231	The Tower of Babel—Nimrod—Egypt, Assyria, Babylon founded.	2900	1088	Birth of David.
1948	2040	Abraham born.	2930	1058	David King in Hebron.
2048	1940	Isaac born.	2937	1051	David King over all Israel.
2108	1880	Jacob and Esau born.	2952	1036	Birth of Solomon.
2199	1789	Joseph born.	2970	1018	Death of David; Solomon reigns.
2229	1759	Joseph Governor of Egypt.	2973	1015	The building of the first Temple commenced.
2238	1750	Jacob and his family settle in Egypt.	2981	1007	Dedication of the first Temple.
2255	1733	Death of Jacob.	3010	978	Death of Solomon, and Division of the Kingdom.
2309	1679	Death of Joseph.			

		<i>Kingdom of Judah.*</i>		<i>Kingdom of Israel.*</i>		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3010	978	REHOBOAM (17 years). <i>Shemariah.</i>	3010	978	JEROBOAM I. (22 years). <i>Ahijah.</i>	Shishak King of Egypt.	
3014	974	Shishak plunders Jerusalem.			War with Judah.	Tabrimmon reigns in Damascus.	
3027	961	ABIJAM (3 years). War with Zerah.			Nadab (2 years).	Zerah King of Egypt.	
3030	958	ASA (41 years). Defeat of Zerah.	3032	956		Benhadad King of Syria.	
		<i>Azariah</i> and <i>Hananî.</i>			BAASHA (24 years). Tirzah the royal residence.		
		Alliance with Benhadad and war with Israel.	3033	955			

\* The names of the kings are in CAPITALS, and of the prophets in *Italics.*



<i>Kingdom of Judah.</i>		<i>Kingdom of Israel.</i>		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3071	917	JEHOSHAPHAT (25 years). Jehoram, his son, marries Athaliah, daughter of Ahab. Alliance between Judah and Israel against the Syrians. Battle of Ramoth Gilead. <i>Jehu and Eliezer.</i>		3056 932 ELAH (2 years.) 3057 931 ZIMRI (7 days). Zimri murdered. Civil war between Omri and Tibni. 3061 927 OMRI (12 years). Samaria, the capital, built 3068 920 AHAB (22 years). Jezebel persecutes the prophets. <i>Elijah and Micaiah.</i>	Ethbaal King of Tyre and Sidon. Benhadad II. reigns in Damascus.
3095 3103	893 885	JEHORAM (8 years). AHAZIAH (1 year). Ahaziah and Jehoram slain by Jehu.		3088 900 AHAZIAH (2 years). 3090 898 JEHORAM (12 years). <i>Elisba.</i>	Hazael of Damascus.
3103 3109	885 879	ATHALIAH'S usurpation (6 years). JEHOASH, or JOASH (40 years).		3103 885 JEHU (28 years). Hazael conquers Israel east of Jordan.	
3131 3147	857 841	The Temple repaired. Invasion of Judah by Syrians. Zechariah stoned in the Temple.		3131 857 JEHOAHAZ (17 years).	Carthage founded.
3150	838	AMAZIAH (29 years). War with Israel.		3148 840 JEHOASH (16 years). Gains three victories over Sephians. Takes Jerusalem.	Benhadad III. in Syria.
3179	809	UZZIAH, or AZARIAH (52 years). <i>Joth, Hosea, Zechariah.</i>		3164 824 JEROBOAM II. (41 years). <i>Jonah, Amos.</i>	The era of the Olympiads com- mences. Assyria becomes powerful.
		3205 783 Death of Jeroboam II. Interregnum 10 years. 3216 772 ZECHARIAH (6 months). 3217 771 SIALLUM (1 month).			

<i>Kingdom of Judah.</i>		<i>Kingdom of Israel.</i>		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3230	758	JOTHAM (16 years). <i>Isaiah.</i>	3228	MENAHEN (10 years). Israel pays tribute to Pul, King of Assyria.	
3246	742	AHAZ (16 years). Ahaz defeated by Israel and Syria. 200,000 captives taken to Samaria and Damascus. Alliance with Assyria. <i>Odcd, Micah.</i>	3230	PEKAHIAH (2 years). PEKAH (20 years). Alliance with Rezin, King of Syria, against Judah. Tiglath-Pileser ravages Northern Israel and carries many captives to Assyria.	Rome founded. Tiglath-Pileser reigns in Assyria. Nabonassar King of Babylon. Tiglath-Pileser conquers and slays Rezin.
3262	726	HEZEKIAH (29 years). Reforms the Temple service. The great Passover. The Philistines subdued.	3250	Death of Pekah. Interregnum (9 years). HOSHEA (9 years) tributary to the Assyrian King.	
			3259	Hoshea allies himself with So (Sabaco I.) King of Egypt. Shalmaneser, besieges Samaria, and takes Hoshea prisoner.	Shalmaneser IV. King of Assyria. Sargon King of Assyria.
			3265	Samaria captured. The Israelites led captives to Assyria. The land of Israel colonized by Assyrians. End of the Kingdom of Israel.	Merodach-Baladon King of Babylon. War of Sargon with Egypt.

<i>Kingdom of Judah.</i>		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3276	712	Destruction of Sennacherib's army.	Sargon besieges Tyre.
3277	711	Hezekiah's illness.	Numa Pompilius.
3278	710	Merodach-Baladan sends ambassadors to Hezekiah.	Esar-Haddon King of Assyria.
3292	696	MANASSEH (55 years).	Nabopolassar establishes the Babylonian Empire; takes Nineveh.
3347	641	AMON (2 years).	Tarquinius Priscus.
3349	639	JOSIAH (31 years). Great reformation.	
3366	622	War with Necho, King of Egypt.	
3380	608	Death of Josiah.	

		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3380	608	JEHOAHAZ (3 months), Necho leads Jehoahaz captive to Egypt.	Nebuchadnezzar defeats Necho at Carchemish.
		JEHOIAKIM (11 years).	
3388	600	Nebuchadnezzar invades Judah.	
	3391	JEHOIACHIN (3 months) first exile.	Darius the Mede born.
3391	597	<i>Ezekiel</i> in Babylon.	Solon at Athens.
		ZEDEKIAH (11 years). <i>Habakkuk</i> .	
3400	588	Siege of Jerusalem by the Babylonians.	
3401	587	Zedekiah allies himself with Egypt.	
3402	586	Jerusalem taken. Zedekiah's eyes put out. Nebuzaradan burns the Temple. Commencement of the Babylonian exile. End of the Kingdom of Judah.	
3402	586	Gedaliah made Governor at Mizpah. Gedaliah murdered by Ishmael. Flight to Egypt.	
3403	585		Egypt conquered by the Babylonians.
<i>Jews in Babylon.</i>			
3407	581	More Jews taken captive to Babylon, among them <i>Daniel</i> .	
3427	561	Death of Nebuchadnezzar; his son, Evil-Merodach, succeeds.	
3428	560	Jehoiachin restored to freedom at Babylon.	
3429	559	Neriglissar King of Babylon.	
3434	554	Belshazzar King of Babylon.	
3450	538	Capture of Babylon by Cyrus the Persian and Darius II. the Mede. Death of Belshazzar.	Cyrus King of Persia.
<i>Jews under Persian Rule.</i>			
3452	536	Cyrus gives the Jews permission to return to the Holy Land. The first band of exiles set out for Jerusalem under Zerubabel. They commence the rebuilding of the Temple.	
3453	535	The Samaritans oppose the work.	
3459	529	<i>Obadiah</i> . Death of Cyrus. Cambyses (Ahasuerus of Ezra IV.) succeeds.	Tarquin the Proud at Rome



<i>Jews under Persian Rule.</i>		<i>Other Nations.</i>	
3463	525	Artaxerxes (Pseudo-Smerdis) King of Persia. The building of the Temple stopped. Darius Hystaspes succeeds to the Persian throne. Permission for rebuilding the Temple renewed.	Cambyses conquers Egypt.
3466	522		
3472	516	<i>Haggai and Zechariah.</i> The Temple finished.	The Persians attack India. Darius invades Greece. Marathon.
3476	512		
3498	490	Ahasuerus (Xerxes) King of Persia. Queen Vashti banished.	Xerxes invades Greece. Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis.
3503	485		
3505	483	Esther Queen of Persia. Haman's plot and death. Mordecai appointed Viceroy.	Epoch of Herodotus.
3508	480		
3509	479	Artaxerxes Longimanus King of Persia. Ezra leads a band of exiles to Jerusalem. Great reformation. Nehemiah's mission to the Holy Land. He rebuilds the walls and towers.	Peloponnesian War. Socrates, Thucydides and Xenophon flourish in Greece.
3514	474		
3523	465	Darius Nothus King of Persia. <i>Malachi.</i> Nehemiah's return to Palestine.	End of Peloponnesian War.
3530	458		
3544	444	The Samaritans build a temple on Mount Gerizim.	
3556	432		
3564	424	Artaxerxes II. King of Persia. Artaxerxes III. King of Persia.	
3574	414		
3584	404	Darius Codomannus last Persian King. Alexander of Macedon subdues Persia. The Jews under Greek rule.	
3624	364		
3653	335		
3658	330		

## APPENDIX II.

## THE JEWISH YEAR—ITS FESTIVALS AND FASTS.

**The Year.**—The Jewish year is of a double nature ; in one respect it is lunar in another it is solar. It is lunar because its months are reckoned by the revolutions of the *moon* ; they therefore consist, sometimes of twenty-nine days, and sometimes of thirty days. If the year were always made to consist of twelve such months, neither more or less, it would result that all our festivals and fasts would become movable. *Pesach* would sometimes occur in spring, sometimes in summer, or autumn, or winter ; and so with the other appointed times. This is what really happens among the Mahometans, whose *Kourban Bairam*, for instance, happens in turn in each of their months. But as the festivals have been appointed by Divine command to occur in certain fixed seasons—*Pesach*, for instance in the spring, and *Succoth* in the autumn—it follows that though the *months* depend upon the moon's revolutions, the *years* cannot be determined by the same standard.

The year is solar, inasmuch as it has been made to agree with the solar cycle of nineteen years; in other words, every nineteen years the lunar and the solar dates are made to agree. This is effected by adding an additional month to the twelve, sometimes every three years, and more rarely every two years. A year of twelve months is called שְׁנָה פְּשוּטָה (*Shono P'shuto*), an ordinary year; while one containing thirteen months is styled שְׁנָה מְעוּבֶּרֶת (*Shono M'ubaras*), an intercalary or embolismic year. In a cycle of nineteen years, twelve are ordinary and seven are intercalary. In such a period the intercalary year occurs five times every three years and twice every two years.

Ordinary years are of three kinds: (1) Imperfect, containing 353 days; (2) Common, containing 354 days; and (3) Perfect, containing 355 days. An intercalary year may contain 383, 384, or 385 days.

**The Year of Release.**—In Biblical times every seventh year was called *שְׁנַת הַשְּׁמִיטָה*, "The Year of Release," or "Sabbatical Year". No agricultural work was done, the land was not ploughed, nor were the fruit or olive trees pruned or trimmed. That which grew of itself was left to be gathered by the poor and the stranger. Servants were to be set free, debtors were to be released from their debts, and the law was to be read publicly in the hearing of all the people. It was to be a Sabbath of rest throughout the whole land, so that the soil itself and its cultivators should have surcease from toil.

**The Year of Jubilee.**—Every fiftieth year—that is, the end of every seven periods of seven years—was to be celebrated as a Year of Jubilee, שְׁנַת הַיּוֹבֵל.

It was solemnly announced on the sacred Day of Atonement by the blowing of trumpets. It was to be a year of liberty, when every man was to return unto his possessions. All land and houses, in unwall'd cities, that had been sold or otherwise disposed of during the preceding forty-nine years, were to revert to the original owner. Servants and bondmen were to be set free, and even those who were willing to continue in service were to be discharged.

**The Months.**—The year consists of twelve months:—

[illegible]

## The MONTHS—(continued).

<i>Av</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	אָב	5.
<i>Alul</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	אָלוּל	6.
<i>Tishri</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	תִּשְׁרִי	7.
<i>Cheshvan, or Marcheshvan</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	מַרְחֶשְׁוֹן, or חֶשְׁוֹן	8.	
<i>Kislive</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	כֶּסֶלִיו	9.
<i>Tivise</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	טִבֵּת	10.
<i>Sh'vat</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	שֶׁבֶט	11.
<i>Adar</i>	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	אֲדָר	12.

An intercalary, or embolismic year, consists of thirteen months; and in such case a second Adar **אֲדָר שֵׁנִי**, *V'adar*, or, **אֲדָר שֵׁנִי**, *Adar Shine* is added on.

The ecclesiastical or religious year begins with *Nisan* and then *Tishri* is considered the seventh month; but the civil year is reckoned from *Tishri*, and then *Nisan* is the seventh month. The first day of a Jewish month is called **רֹאשׁ הַחֹדֶשׁ**, head of the month, and is observed as a minor festival. The short Hallel is recited in the synagogue. The day preceding is kept as a partial fast. It is called **יוֹם כְּפֹר קָטָן**, lesser Day of Atonement, and prayers of supplication, **פְּלִיחוֹת** are offered up in our houses of worship.

**נִסָּן** (*Nisan*).—This month is called **אֲבִיב** (*Oriv*) whenever mentioned in the Bible before the Captivity. It consists of thirty days, partly in March and partly in April. It is the first month of the religious, and the seventh of the civil year. In the Holy Land the barley now commences to ripen, while the wheat is just coming into ear.

In this month we celebrate the **פֶּסַח**, *Passover*, one of the three chief festivals commanded in the Bible. When the Jews dwelt in the Holy Land it was incumbent upon all males to go up to Jerusalem to keep the feast, and to bring their offerings to God. The Paschal Lamb was also slain on the afternoon of the fourteenth of *Nisan*, in commemoration of the lamb which our forefathers were commanded to kill in Egypt, and whose blood was sprinkled on the door-posts of their houses, to shield them from the destroying angel.

The Sabbath before *Pesach* is called **שַׁבַּת הַגָּדוֹל**, the Great Sabbath. When God was about to bring our ancestors out of Egypt, he commanded them to choose a lamb on the tenth day of *Nisan*, to keep it till the evening of the fourteenth, and then to kill it. In the year of the Exodus, the tenth of *Nisan* was on a Sabbath. This open selection of a lamb, for the purpose of slaughter, was an important event, because to the Egyptians it was a sacred animal, and the act of the Israelites was an unmistakable proof that the deliverance from captivity was at hand.

The fourteenth day of *Nisan* is called **עֶרֶב פֶּסַח**, the Eve of the Passover. It is the duty of all first-born male Jews above the age of thirteen to fast on this day, in remembrance of the fact that when God slew all the first-born of Egypt he spared the first-born of the Israelites. It is called **תַּעֲנִית-בְּכוֹרִים**, the Fast of the First-born. Should it occur on Sabbath the fast is kept on the previous Thursday.

The important festival of **פֶּסַח** (*Pesach*), commences on the evening of the fourteenth day of *Nisan*, and lasts eight days. It is also called **חַג הַמִּצּוֹת**, the Feast of Unleavened Bread. It commemorates the miraculous deliverance of the Jews from the cruel bondage they had so long endured in Egypt. For two hundred and ten years had they borne their galling servitude, but at length the Lord led them forth from the land of their captivity with a high hand. On the night of their departure, so great was the haste of the Egyptians to send them away, that they had not time to bake their bread. They were compelled to remove their dough before it was leavened, their kneading-troughs being bound up in their clothes upon their shoulders. Of this dough they afterwards baked unleavened bread, "for it was not leavened." On this account we are most particular



to avoid eating anything leavened during the whole of *Pesach*, nor do we allow any leaven to remain in our houses for the eight days of the festival. To carry this into effect we very carefully remove all fermented food, such as bread, beer, &c., from our houses before the festival. On the eve before the fourteenth of *Nisan* the master of each household is in duty bound to make a most particular search through his house, to see that all leaven has been removed. This is called **לֵיל בְּרִיקַת חֵמֶץ**, the Evening of Searching for Leaven.

The first two and the last two days of the festival must be kept as strictly as Sabbath, with the sole exception that the preparation and cooking of food may be performed on those days. On the first day we offer up a special prayer that God may send the dew to refresh our fields during the heats of summer. The four middle days are called **חול המועד**, when we may carry on our business and engage in all urgent occupations.

The first two evenings of *Pesach* are marked by a most important ceremonial in our houses, called **סדר**, Order. The table for the evening meal is laid out in this manner. At the head of the table is placed a dish containing three **מַצּוֹת**, separated from each other by linen cloths. In another dish are placed—(1) A part of the shank bone of a lamb, roasted, which commemorates the **קֶרֶבַּן פֶּסַח**, the Paschal offering; (2) a roasted egg, a symbol of the **קֶרֶבַּן חֲגִיגָה**, the usual festival sacrifice. (3) A third dish contains a mixture of chopped apples, almonds, &c., called **הַרֹקֶת**; which is to remind us of the mortar used by our ancestors in Egypt. (4) In a fourth dish is placed a cup of vinegar, or salt water, together with a quantity of bitter herbs, generally the green tops of the horse-radish. This is to call to mind the bitter oppression our forefathers endured in Egypt, when the Egyptians "made their lives bitter with hard bondage in mortar, and in brick, and in all manner of service in the field." Parsley and horse-radish are also eaten in memory of our former servitude. Decanters of **כֶּנֶסֶר** wine, and glasses, are likewise placed upon the table.

The members of the household having taken their seats, the head of the family commences the service by reciting the **קִידּוּשׁ**, Sanctification of the Festival. The first part of the **הַגְדָּה** (a book which relates the history of the Deliverance from Egypt) is then read, and the ceremonies it enjoins are performed. The evening meal is then partaken of. Lastly, the second part of the **הַגְדָּה**, a collection of hymns praising and glorifying God, is chanted. During the service four cups of wine are drunk.

The **עוֹמֶר** (*Omer*). During the existence of the Temple the second day of Passover was marked by the offering of an *Omer* (probably half-a-gallon) of the newly-reaped barley, as commanded in the Bible. On that day also our ancestors commenced counting forty-nine days, or seven complete weeks, and on the fiftieth day they celebrated the festival of **שִׁבּוּעוֹת** (*Shovuos*). Since the destruction of the second Temple we have ceased to offer sacrifices, yet we religiously observe the counting of the *Omer*, from the eve of the second day of *Pesach*, for forty-nine days.

The passage of the Red Sea took place on the seventh day of the Passover. In memory of this miraculous event we read the portion of Scripture (Ex. xiii. 17 to xv. 26), which tells how the children of Israel passed over the Red Sea on dry land, while the Egyptians who pursued them were drowned. It also contains the song chanted by Moses and the children of Israel on the occasion.

**אֵיָר** (*Iyar*). The second month is called **אֵיָר**; before the Captivity it was known as **זִי** (*Zif*). It has always twenty-nine days, and extends over parts of April and May. It is the season of early summer in the Holy Land—the barley harvest is nearly over, and wheat is rapidly coming into ear.

Three minor fast days are observed in this month, called **שְׁנֵי חֲמִישֵׁי וָשֵׁנִי**, the second, the fifth, and the following second day of the week—that is, Monday, Thursday, and the following Monday. These fast days are kept to atone for any sins we may have unknowingly committed, or any religious duties we may have neglected, during the festivities of *Pesach*.



In Biblical times the festival of **פֶּסַח שְׁנִי**, or the "Second Passover," was held on the 14th of Iyar. It was observed by those who were unable to keep the Passover in its due season, owing to their being on a journey, or to their having been defiled by contact with a dead body.

The eighteenth day of Iyar always corresponds with the thirty-third day of the Omer. It is a minor festival. In the days of **רַבִּי עֲקִיבָה** there was a great plague in the Holy Land, which carried off a great many of its inhabitants. Among those who died were some thousands of the Rabbi's pupils. The plague suddenly ceased on the thirty-third day of the Omer. The day is therefore kept as a holiday by school-children, and it is sometimes called the "Scholars' Feast." We name it in

Hebrew, **לִגְלֻעוֹמֶר**, the letters **ל"ג** representing the number 33.

**סִיָּוִן** (*Sivan*). This is the third month, and includes parts of May and June. It has always thirty days. On the sixth and seventh days we celebrate the second of the great religious festivals, which, in Biblical times, had to be kept in Jerusalem. The festival is called **שָׁבוּעוֹת** (*Shavuot*), and is observed for two distinct reasons: firstly, because it marks the completion of the wheat harvest in the Holy Land; and secondly, because it commemorates the giving of the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai. It is known under four names:

1. **הַנֶּשְׁבָּעוֹת**, Feast of Weeks, because seven complete weeks have been counted from the second day of *Pesach*.

2. **יוֹם הַבְּכוּרִים**, Day of First Ripe Fruits, because on this day the first ears of the ripe wheat were offered in the Temple.

3. **הַנֶּחֱזָר**, Harvest Festival, because it was the period of the wheat harvest.

4. **זְמַן מִתֵּן תּוֹרָה**, The Time of Giving the Law, because on the sixth day of *Sivan* the decalogue was spoken by God from the top of Mount Sinai.

*Shavuot* does not happen in this country at the period of the wheat harvest, but when the flowers, with which God has so abundantly decked the earth, are most abundant. To show our gratitude to the Giver of all good we beautify our synagogues during this festival with choice flowers and shrubs, pleasant to the eye, and fragrant with many perfumes. It is also a custom to stay up during the first night of the festival, for the purpose of reading portions of the Law, the Prophets, &c.

The three days before *Shavuot* are called **שְׁלֹשַׁת יָמֵי הַהֲבֵלָה**, Three Days of Setting Bounds, in memory of the command enjoined upon Moses to set bounds round Mount Sinai, previous to the giving of the Ten Commandments.

**תַּמּוּז** (*Tammuz*). This is the fourth month, and consists always of twenty-nine days, during parts of June and July. The hot season now commences in the Holy Land.

The seventeenth day of this month, **שְׁבַעָה עָשָׂר בְּתַמּוּז**, is observed as a strict fast from sunrise to nightfall, because of the grievous calamities that befell our nation on this day. It was on the seventeenth of Tammuz that Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, broke down the walls of Jerusalem, after having besieged it nearly two years. Thousands of our ancestors perished during the siege. King Zedekiah was taken prisoner, his sons were slain in his presence, and then his eyes were put out by order of Nebuchadnezzar.

On the same day of the month, many years later, another calamity overtook our nation. Titus, at the head of a Roman army, having besieged Jerusalem, captured its walls and laid siege to the Holy Temple. These events were attended with the slaughter of many thousands of our ancestors.

It has been handed down by tradition that Moses descended from Mount Sinai on the seventeenth of *Tammuz*. Seeing the people worshipping a golden calf, he threw down the tables of stone he was bearing in his hands, and broke them at the foot of the Mount.

For all these reasons the Fast of *Tammuz* is a very sad day in our history. Yet God has promised, through his prophet Zechariah, that it shall be turned to a day of rejoicing: "Thus saith the Lord of Hosts; the fast of the fourth month, and

the fast of the fifth, and the fast of the seventh, and the fast of the tenth, shall be to the house of Judah joy and gladness and cheerful feasts."

**אָב** (*Av*) is the fifth month. It has always thirty days, partly in July and partly in August. In the Holy Land the hot season continues, and the fruits are beginning to ripen.

The ninth day of **אָב תַּשְׁעָה בְּאָב** is the most mournful day in our calendar. Both the Temples were destroyed on it—the first by Nebuchadnezzar, who, at the same time, carried the Kingdom of Judah into captivity at Babylon; the other, many years later, by Titus, amidst a dreadful scene of fire and death. With this later event our nationality may be said to have ceased, and from that time forth the Jews have been wanderers in every quarter of the globe. We observe the day with particular sadness and self-affliction. The fast, unlike all others, save the Day of Atonement, lasts from sunset on the eighth, till nightfall on the ninth day. Our synagogues present a desolate appearance. All ornaments are removed, the ark is stripped of its curtain, and instead of the usual flood of light, a dim candle flickers here and there. The congregants are seated on the earth; the service is chanted in a low and mournful key. The "Book of Lamentations," composed by the prophet Jeremiah, is read, together with special dirges called **קִינוֹת**, all descriptive of the sufferings of our ancestors, and of the utter woe and destruction that overtook Jerusalem. The theme of the day's services is well expressed in the verse from Jeremiah: "How doth the city sit solitary that was full of people! how is she become as a widow! she that was great among the nations, and princess among the provinces, how is she become tributary!" Yet a ray of comfort pierces the gloom, for this day, too, shall in the future become a time of joy.

The period from the ninth to the thirtieth of the month is called **מִנְחָם אָב**, meaning **אָב** that comforts, or consoles. This expression is always used in dating a Hebrew letter. The Sabbath before the fast of *Av* is called **שַׁבַּת הַזֶּוֹן** because the portion of the prophets read on that day (Isaiah I.) begins with the words, **הַזֶּוֹן יִשְׁעִיהוּ**, "the vision of Isaiah."

The Sabbath after the fast of *Av* is called **שַׁבַּת נֶחֱמוּ** because the portion of the Prophets (Isaiah xl.) read in synagogue on that day, commences with the word **נֶחֱמוּ**: "Comfort ye, comfort ye my people, saith your God."

The fifteenth day of *Av* **תְּמִיזָה עֶשְׂרִי בְּאָב** is kept as a minor festival, in memory of a joyous event that occurred in the early history of our people. In the days of the latter Judges the inhabitants of Gibeah, a town in Benjamin, committed such a fearful sin that all Israel assembled to punish them. The Benjamites took the part of their townsmen. Two severe battles were fought between the Israelites and the Benjamites; in the first the Israelites were defeated but in the second the Benjamites were overthrown and nearly all killed. The Israelites then swore that no daughter of theirs should ever marry a man of Benjamin. After a time they were sorry for their oath, for if they kept to it the tribe of Benjamin would die out altogether. They became reconciled on the fifteenth of *Av*, which day has ever since been regarded as a holiday.

**אֶלּוּל** (*Alul*) is the sixth month of the year. It has always twenty-nine days, extending over parts of August and September. In the Holy Land it is the last of the hot months; the fruits are fully ripe, and the vintage has commenced.

This month has neither feast nor fast, yet it has a significance of its own, as it warns us of the approach of the following month, containing some of our most sacred and important days. This warning consists in the blowing of the **שׁוֹפָר**, ram's horn, in our synagogues, commencing on the first day, and extending throughout the month, except on Sabbath. During its fourth week, which is the week preceding the New Year, special prayers, called **פְּלִיחוֹת** (propitiatory prayers), are offered up in our places of worship.

**תִּשְׁרִי** (*Tishri*). This is the seventh month of the religious year, but the first of the civil year. It has thirty days, extending over parts of September and October. Before the Captivity it was known by the name **אֶתְנָנִים** *Ethanim*. It is the period of autumn in the Holy Land; the fruits and vintage have been gathered in and the land is being ploughed for the following harvest.

Tishri is the most important of all the months, on account of the number of its sacred days. These comprise the festival of ראש השנה, or New Year, the fast יום כפור, Day of Atonement, and the festival of סוכות, or Tabernacles.

ראש השנה.—This sacred festival is celebrated on the first and second days of Tishri. It is the festival of the New Year, and, while it is a time of rejoicing, it is also a period of great solemnity. We believe that on these days all our actions of the past year are reviewed by the Great Judge. It behoves us therefore to have a becoming sense of the day's importance, and to "rejoice with trembling." The service in our synagogues is very impressive; the ministers are robed in white, and a white curtain hangs before the ark. The ram's horn שופר is sounded many times to call our attention to the duties and significance of the day, and to remind us that the great Day of Atonement is drawing nigh.

This festival is known by four names:

1. ראש השנה, New Year, literally, "head of the year."
2. יום הזכרון, Day of Memorial, because God calls to memory our faults and sins of the past year.
3. יום הדין, Day of Judgment, for on these days we are on trial before the Judge of the whole earth.
4. יום הטרועה, A day of Sonnding the Horn, because we sound the ram's horn several times during the service in our synagogues. Tradition states that on the first day of Tishri the ram was offered instead of Isaac on Mount Moriah.

The first ten days of Tishri are called עשרת ימי התשובה, Ten Days of Penitence). They should be spent in serious reflection over our past life, and in preparation for the Day of Atonement. In our synagogues קליהות are recited during the morning service of the week days.

The day after ראש השנה—that is, the third day of Tishri—is observed as a fast-day. It is called צום גדליה, the Fast of Gedaliah. When Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, captured Jerusalem, he led the larger number of the inhabitants of Judah captives to Babylon. Some of the humbler classes were left in the Holy Land to cultivate the soil and tend the vineyards. Over these, Gedaliah, son of Ahikam, was appointed governor. His rule lasted only some seven months when he was treacherously slain by Ishmael, son of Nethaniah, of the seed royal, who aimed at obtaining supreme power in Palestine. In memory of the death of the good Gedaliah we keep the fast which is named after him. The Sabbath between the New Year and the Day of Atonement is called שבת תשובה, the Sabbath of Repentance.

יום כפור. The tenth day of Tishri is the most solemn and sacred day of the year. It is the dread and impressive Day of Atonement, when we crave atonement from God for the transgressions of the past year. It is a Sabbath of Sabbaths, and we scrupulously abstain from any action that may not be performed upon the Sabbath day. We observe a strict fast from sunset on the ninth to nightfall on the tenth day—a fast from which nothing can release us save dangerous illness. The solemnities of כפור commence with the service in our synagogues on the eve of the tenth day, which is called כל נדרי. On כפור itself we attend the house of worship from sunrise till the conclusion of the fast, confessing our sins, soliciting pardon from God, and praying for a continuance of His mercy and loving-kindness. At nightfall the sound of the Shofar proclaims the termination of the fast, and the conclusion of the day's sacred observances. The ten days from the New Year to and including the Day of Atonement are called ימים נוראים, Days of Awe.

סוכות, or Tabernacles, is the third and last of the important festivals called שלש רגלים, the others being Pesach and Shavuot. It is also called הגאסוף, the Festival of Ingathering the latest products of the orchard and vineyard having now been gathered and stored. It commences on the fifteenth day of Tishri,



and lasts nine days. The first two and the last two are kept as strictly as Sabbath, with the exception that food may be prepared and cooked on them. On intermediate days we may follow all necessary occupations.

The Feast of Tabernacles is kept in memory of our ancestors dwelling in booths or tabernacles during their forty years' wandering in the wilderness, after their redemption from Egypt. During the whole of that long period they had no houses properly so called, but inhabited huts probably formed of branches of trees, which could be easily put up, and as easily removed. It is our duty also to erect tabernacles roofed with leaves, and to dwell in them, or at least take our meals in them, during the first eight days of *Succous*.

We are likewise commanded in the Bible to take branches of the palm, **לולב**, of the myrtle, **הדרסים**, of the willow of the brook, **ערבות**, together with the fruit of the citron, **אתרוג**, and to rejoice with them before the Lord. The various branches are tastefully bound together, and with these, and the citron in our hands, we recite the prayer called **הלל**, hymn of praise, and walk round the synagogue in procession, chanting the **הושענא**, "Hosanna."

The seventh day of **כבוד** is called **הושענא רבא** "the Great Hosanna," from the prayers recited on the occasion. It is a festival, but of a solemn kind. In the synagogue seven scrolls of the law are taken out, and the palm-bearing worshippers walk in procession seven times round the synagogue, while chanting the Hosannas. Towards the termination of the service, the leaves are beaten off the willow branches—a relic of the beautiful ceremony in the Temple, when the Jews with joyful song strewed the altar with the willow-twigs they had used during the festival. The previous night is spent in reading parts of the Bible.

The eighth day of the festival is called **שמיני עצרת**, the eighth day of solemn assembly. In our synagogues a special prayer is offered to God, entreating Him to send the wind and the rain in their due season.

The ninth day of the festival is called **שמחת תורה**, the rejoicing of the law. On every Sabbath throughout the year a portion of the Law is read in the synagogue. On **שמחת תורה**, the last portion of Deuteronomy, containing the death and burial of Moses, is recited, and immediately we commence the first section of Genesis narrating the Creation. It is a grand fact in our religious history, that this unceasing recital of the Sacred Book has continued uninterruptedly for so many centuries. The member of the congregation to whom the last section of the Law is read, is called **חתן תורה** Bridegroom of the Law, and the one to whom the first section is read is called **חתן בראשית**, the Bridegroom of the Commencement.

**מרחשון**, or **חשוון** (*Cheshvan or Marcheshvan*), is the eighth month of the year. Before the period of the Captivity it was called **בול** *Bul*. It may contain twenty-nine or thirty days, and extends over parts of October and November. In the Holy Land *Cheshvan* is the month of the former rain, which is of a light character, and does not hinder the sowing of wheat and barley.

During this month we observe a second set of minor fast days, called **ימי המשיב**, the second day, the fifth day, and the following second day of the week; in other words, Monday, Thursday, and the following Monday. The fasts are kept to atone for any shortcomings in our religious observances during the preceding festival of *Succous*.

**כסליו** (*Kislive*) is the ninth month of the year. It contains sometimes twenty-nine and sometimes thirty days, and lasts over parts of November and December. In the Holy Land *Kislive* is the first month of winter, the mountains are covered with snow, and all the trees are stripped of their leaves.

The festival of **חנוכה**, dedication, commences on the twenty-fifth of this month, and continues eight days. In the time of the Second Temple, about 170 B.C.E., Antiochus Epiphanes, King of Syria, cruelly oppressed the Jews dwelling in Palestine. He hated the Jewish religion, and laboured unceasingly to uproot it. He massacred the Jews dwelling in Jerusalem, polluted the Holy Temple by



offering on its altar the flesh of the swine, and placed within its walls the statues of the Grecian gods. He burnt all the books of the Law his officers could find, prohibited the keeping of the Sabbath, and punished severely those who even attempted to retain the name of Jew. All Palestine lay crushed at the tyrant's feet, and Jewish nationality as well as the Jewish faith seemed about to perish together.

But deliverance was at hand. At Modin, a village in Judah, there dwelt an aged man of priestly family, named Mattathias the Asmonean, a man of the greatest piety. With him lived his five sons, whom he had trained in a passionate love of their holy faith. They were all brave men, but the most noteworthy of them was Judas, surnamed Maccabeus. It happened that some Syrian officers visited Modin, and erecting an altar to one of their idols, bade Mattathias to sacrifice to it. The aged patriot, filled with holy anger, slew the king's messenger, and raised the standard of revolt. He soon gathered an army, but died ere a blow could be struck, appointing Judas to succeed him.

For three years the Jews struggled against the Syrian hosts with varying fortune, but in the end completely routed them in two great battles. Judas, following his victories, drove his enemies entirely out of Palestine. Entering Jerusalem, he caused the Temple to be purified. On the twenty-fifth of Kislive he consecrated anew the House of God. The perpetual lamp was about to be lit when it was discovered that there remained but one flask of holy oil, sufficient for one day only. By a miracle of God the oil lasted eight days, till a further supply could be prepared. In memory of the dedication of the Temple we keep the festival of **חֲנֻכָּה**. On the first night of *Chanukah* we light up in our synagogues and houses one light; on the second night two lights, and so on for the whole eight nights. We also chant a special hymn, beginning with the words **מְעוֹן צוֹר**.

**טִבֵּת** (*Tivise*) is the tenth month of the Jewish year. It has always twenty-nine days, partly in December and partly in January. In the Holy Land it is mid-winter, and the coldest month of the year.

On the tenth day of *Tivise* **עֵשְׂרָה בְּטַבֵּת** a fast is observed in sad memory of the commencement of the siege of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon. This is one of the fast days promised by Zechariah to become a day of joy.

**שֶׁבַט** (*Sh'vat*). This is the eleventh month of the year. It always has thirty days, and extends over parts of January and February. In Palestine the worst part of the winter is over, and the weather begins to get warmer.

The fifteenth day of this month **חֲמִשָּׁה עָשָׂר בְּשֶׁבַט** is kept as a minor festival. It is called **רֵאשִׁית הַשָּׁנָה לְאֵילָנוֹת**, New Year for the Trees. It is supposed that about this day the sap begins to rise in the trees. The rigours of winter are past, the spring is at hand, and we are grateful to our Heavenly Father for having kept us alive to enjoy the approaching season of flower and fruit.

In an ordinary year the last Sabbath in this month is generally known as **פְּרִשַׁת שֶׁקֶלִים**, the Section of the Shekels. In synagogue is read the portion of the Law (Exodus xxx. 11-16) which commands that the Children of Israel who were to be numbered were to offer each of them a half shekel as "a ransom for his soul." The money thus gathered was used in the service of the Tabernacle. At the present time a collection is made in our places of worship on the first night of *Purim*, and the proceeds given to the poor. In an intercalary year this Sabbath occurs in the first *Adar*.

**אָדָר** (*Adar*). This is the twelfth month of the year. It has always twenty-nine days, and extends over parts of February and March. In an intercalary year the second *Adar* **אָדָר שֵׁנִי** has also twenty-nine days, and corresponds with our month of March. In the Holy Land the latter rains begin, and the spring is now well advanced.

On the thirteenth day of *Adar* we keep a fast called **תַּעֲנִית אֶסְתֵּר**, the Fast of Esther, in memory of the fast observed by the Jews of Shushan at the command of Queen Esther. This day is closely connected with the Festival of *Purim*. If it occurs on Sabbath, the fast is kept on the *previous* Thursday;

whereas if any of the other fast days (except the Day of Atonement) happens on a Sabbath, it is observed on the *succeeding* Sunday.

The fourteenth day of Adar is kept as a joyous festival, and is called פורים. The origin of this festival is given at length in the Book of Esther. Ahasuerus King of Persia, put away his wife Vashti, and took in her stead Esther, a Jewish maiden, who had been reared by her cousin Mordecai. The king's chief minister, Haman, conceived a deadly hatred against the Jews living in Persia, because of the advancement of Mordecai, and because Mordecai would not bow down to him. He therefore resolved to obtain the king's permission to slay all the Jews in the kingdom. Ahasuerus was very weak-minded, and granted Haman all he desired. The latter cast lots פורים to determine on what month he should carry out his cruel intention. The lot fell upon *Adar*, and Haman sent messengers to all parts of Persia, bidding the inhabitants to kill all the Jews, "young and old, little ones and children," on the thirteenth day of Adar, and to plunder their property.

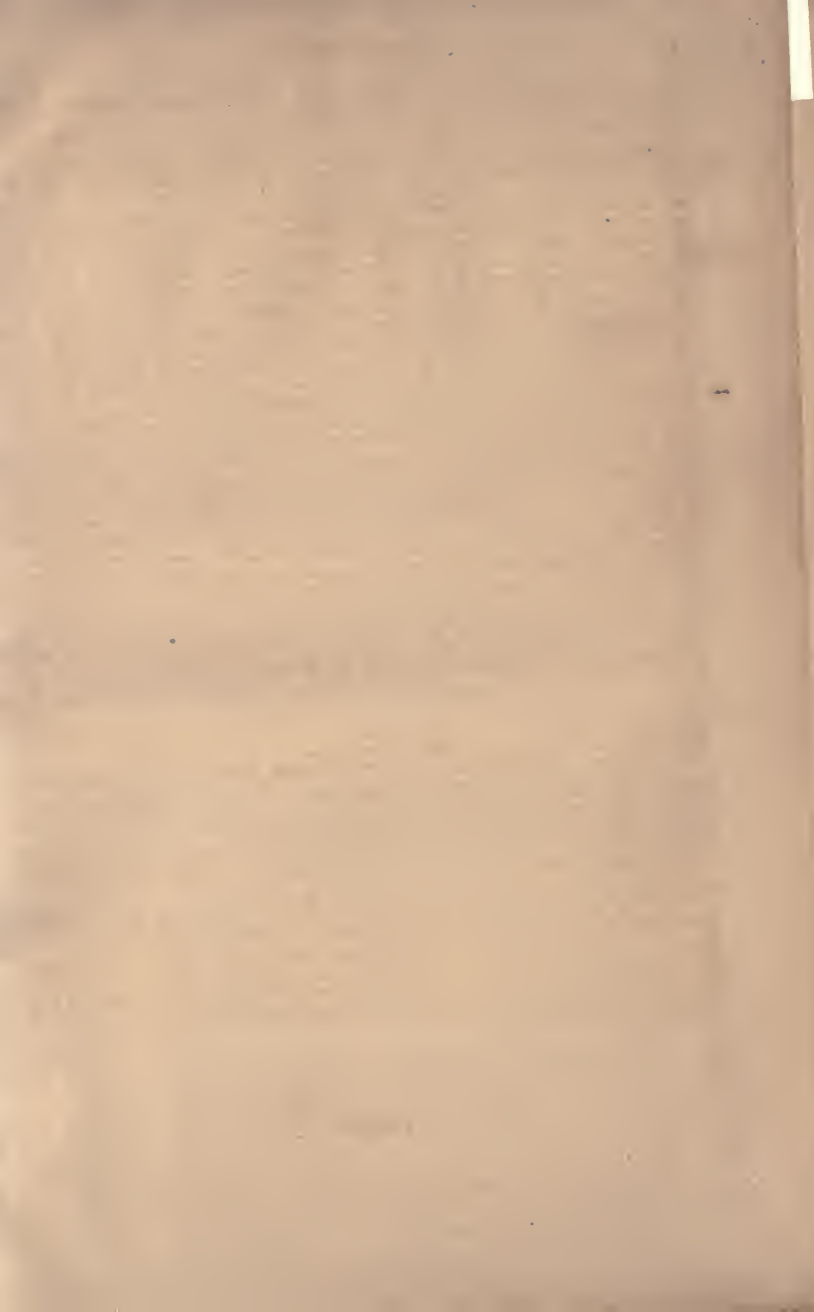
Mordecai, having learned what was intended by the wicked Haman, begged Queen Esther to intercede for her people. It was the custom in Persia that when any one appeared in the presence of the king without being called, he was instantly put to death, unless the king held out to him his golden sceptre. Esther well knew that, in venturing before the king without his command, her life was in danger. Yet she was resolved to undergo the risk. She first asked all the Jews in Shushan, the capital, to fast three days, and she herself fasted. Then, attired in her royal robes, she stood before the king, who immediately held forth to her the golden sceptre. Esther pleaded so earnestly for her people that the wicked Haman and his ten sons were hanged by the king's command, while the Jews throughout Persia received permission to defend themselves against their enemies. The fourteenth day of the month they kept as a day of rejoicing for their miraculous deliverance. In Shushan the Jews slew their enemies also on the fourteenth day, and the fifteenth day of the month was kept as a day of joy. This festival is distinguished as a time of feasting and joy, of giving presents one to another, and especially of bestowing gifts upon the poor. On the night and morning of Purim the מִנְחָה, or parchment scroll in which the Book of Esther is written, is read in our synagogues. The fifteenth day is called פורים, the Purim of Shushan. The rejoicings are continued, but the *Megillah* is not read.

In an intercalary year the Fast of Esther and *Purim* are kept on the thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth days of the second *Adar*.

The Sabbath before Purim is called פֶּרֶשֶׁת זְכוֹר, Sabbath of Remembrance, because we read the section of the Law (Deut. xxv. 17-19) commencing "Remember what Amalek did unto thee by the way when ye were come forth out of Egypt." Haman was descended from the tribe of Amalek.

The latter part of *Adar* has two other special Sabbaths. One is called פֶּרֶשֶׁת פָּרָה, because the portion of the Law (Num. xix. 1-22), referring to the observances of the red heifer is read in our synagogues.

The other Sabbath, which is immediately before the new moon of *Nisan* is called פֶּרֶשֶׁת הַחֹדֶשׁ, the Sabbath of the Month—that is, of the month Nisan. The portion of the law read in our synagogues (Exodus xii. 1-20) begins, "And the Lord spake unto Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying, This month (*Orto* or *Nisan*) shall be unto you the beginning of months; it shall be the first month of the year to you." This Sabbath calls our attention to the approach of *Pesach*.



UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Los Angeles

This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

50m-7,'69(N296s4)—O-120





A 000 875 682 7

PLEASE, DO NOT REMOVE  
THIS BOOK CARD



University Research Library

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26  
13M J95593

CALL NUMBER

BM 105.4159M 1887.

SER VOL PT

